

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

**DEED OF VARIATION OF MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT AND
SUPPLEMENTAL FUNDING AGREEMENTS**

18th March 2014

The Parties to this Deed are:

(1) **The Secretary of State for Education** of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT (the "**Secretary of State**");

- and -

(2) **Equitas Academies Trust**, a charitable company incorporated in England and Wales with registered company number 07662289 whose registered address is c/o Aston Manor Academy, Phillips Street, Aston, Birmingham, B6 4PZ (the "**Company**").

together referred to as the "**Parties**".

INTRODUCTION

- A. The Parties have entered into a master funding agreement on 4 September 2012, a copy of which is contained in Schedule 1, (the "**Existing MFA**").
- B. The Parties have entered into a supplementary funding agreement in respect of Aston Manor Academy on 4 September 2012, a copy of which is contained in Schedule 2] (the "**Existing Aston Manor Academy SFA**");
- C. The Parties have entered into a supplementary funding agreement in respect of Chilwell Croft Academy on 4 September 2012, a copy of which is contained in Schedule 3] (the "**Existing Chilwell Croft SFA**") and
- D. The Parties have agreed to amend and re-state the terms of the Existing MFA, the Existing Aston Manor Academy SFA and the Existing Chilwell Croft Academy SFA, on the terms set out in this Deed.

LEGAL AGREEMENT

- 1. Words, expressions and interpretations used in this Deed shall, unless the context expressly requires otherwise, have the meaning given to them in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, the Amended Master Funding Agreement (as defined in clause 2 below).
- 2. The Secretary of State and the Company agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the Existing MFA shall be amended and re-stated in the form of the Master Funding Agreement set out in Schedule 4 (the "**Amended Master Funding Agreement**"). For the avoidance of doubt, the Amended Master Funding Agreement does not terminate or suspend the Existing MFA but further amends and re-states it.
- 3. The Secretary of State and the Company agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the **Existing Aston Manor Academy SFA** shall be amended and re-stated in the form of the Amended Aston Manor Academy SFA set out in Schedule 5 (the "**Amended Aston Manor Academy SFA**"). For the avoidance of doubt, the Amended Aston Manor Academy SFA does not terminate or suspend the Existing Aston Manor Academy SFA but further amends and re-states it.

4. The Secretary of State and the Company agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the Existing Chilwell Croft Academy SFA shall be amended and re-stated in the form of the Amended Chilwell Croft Academy SFA set out in Schedule 6 (the "**Amended Chilwell Croft Academy SFA**"). For the avoidance of doubt, the Amended Chilwell Croft Academy SFA does not terminate or suspend the Existing Chilwell Croft Academy SFA but further amends and re-states it.

GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION

3. This Deed, and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it, its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the law of England and Wales.
4. The Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out of, or in connection with, this deed or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

COUNTERPARTS

5. This Deed may be executed in any number of counterparts and by the parties to it on separate counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be an original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS whereof this Deed has been executed by the parties hereto and is intended to be and is hereby delivered on the last date listed below.

EXECUTED as a deed by affixing the corporate)
seal of the **Secretary of State for Education**)
authenticated by:-)

David Mabe
.....

Duly authorised by the Secretary of State for Education

Date *18 March 2014*



EXECUTED as a deed by
EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST acting by:

R. C. Linforth
.....

Director

Print name *Prof Ray Linforth*

Date *6/3/14*

Simon Spencer
.....

Director/Secretary

Print name *SIMON SPENCER*

Date *6/3/14*

Schedule 1

Existing MFA

Multi Academy Model
(for Mainstream and Special Academies)

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT

Multi Academy Model
(for Mainstream and Special Academies)

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT

CONTENTS:

SECTION	CLAUSE NO
INTRODUCTION	1 – 10
LEGAL AGREEMENT	11
CHARACTERISTICS OF AN ACADEMY	12
THE SEN OBLIGATIONS	12A-12C
CONDITIONS OF GRANT	
General	13
Governance	14-15
Conduct	16
Criminal Records Bureau Checks	17
Pupils	18-18AA
Designated Teacher for Looked after Children	18A
Teachers and other staff	19-22
Curriculum, curriculum development and delivery and RE and collective worship	23-29A
Assessment	30
Exclusions Agreement	31
School meals	32-33
Charging	34
International Education Surveys	34A
Pupil Premium	34B
DURATION OF THE SCHOOL DAY AND YEAR	34C

GRANTS TO BE PAID BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE

General	35-36
Capital Grant	37-40
Arrangements for Payment of Capital Grant	41
General Annual Grant	42-54H
Earmarked Annual Grant	55-56
Arrangements for payment of GAG and EAG	57-61
Other relevant funding	62-65

FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS

General	66-80A
Borrowing Powers	81-82
Disposal of Assets	83-89

TERMINATION

General	90-93
Change of Control	93A-93C
Effect of Termination	94

GENERAL

Information	95-96
Access by Secretary of State's Officers	97-99
Notices	100-101
Appointment of Additional and Further	
Directors by the Secretary of State	102
Complaints	102A – 102B
General	103-104

SCHEDULE 1

Model Supplemental Funding Agreement for a Mainstream Academy

Model Supplemental Funding Agreement for a Special Academy

ANNEXES TO THE MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT

Memorandum and Articles of the Company

Annex A

Arrangements for pupils with SEN and disabilities at each
Academy – for Mainstream Academies only

Annex B

INTRODUCTION

- 1) This Agreement is made under Section 1 of the Academies Act 2010, between the Secretary of State for Education ("the Secretary of State") and Equitas Academies Trust (the "Company").
- 2) The Company is a company incorporated in England and Wales, limited by guarantee with registered Company number 07662289.
- 3) The Company intends to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of a number of Academies in accordance with this Agreement and the Supplemental Agreements.
- 4) This Agreement and the Supplemental Agreements will apply in respect of an Academy from such time as a Supplemental Agreement relating to that Academy shall have been entered into between the Secretary of State and the Company.
- 5) The following expressions used in this Agreement have the respective meanings assigned to them by the numbered clauses of this Agreement referred to immediately after the reference to the expressions -
 - a) "Academies Financial Handbook" - clause 67;
 - b) "Accounting Officer" – clause 62;
 - c) "Annual Letter of Funding" - clause 60;
 - d) "GAG" – clause 36;
 - e) "Capital Expenditure" - clause 37;
 - f) "Capital Grant" – clause 37;
 - g) "EAG" - clause 36;
 - h) "Local Governing Body" – clause 15;
 - i) "Recurrent Expenditure" – clause 36;
 - j) "Start-up Period" – clause 50;
- 6) In this Agreement the following words and expressions shall have the following

meanings:-

"Academy Financial Year" means the year from 1st September to 31st August or such other period as the Secretary of State may from time to time specify by notice in writing to the Company;

"Additional Directors" means Directors who may be appointed by the Secretary of State under the Articles of Association;

"Academy" means a Mainstream Academy or a Special Academy in respect of which a Supplemental Agreement has been entered into between the Secretary of State and the Company and the expression "Academies" shall refer to all or any of such Academies;

"admission requirements" – are annexed to the relevant Supplemental Agreement;

"this Agreement" means this agreement and its annexes and a reference in this Agreement to a numbered clause or annex is a reference to the clause or annex of this Agreement bearing that number or letter as the same may be amended or supplemented from time to time;

"Business Day" means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a day which is a bank holiday with the meaning given to that expression in the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971;

"Control" in relation to a body corporate ('Entity') means either the legal or beneficial ownership of 30 per cent or more of the issued shares in the Entity ordinarily having voting rights or the power of a person ('A') otherwise to secure –

- (a) either by means of the holding of shares in that Entity or having an interest conferring voting rights at general meetings of the membership of the Entity or of any other body corporate;
- (b) by virtue or any powers conferred by the articles of association or other document regulating that Entity or any other Entity or partnership including, without limitation, the power to appoint or remove a majority of the governing body thereof, or
- (c) by virtue of any agreement, understanding or arrangement between any person or persons,

that the affairs of the first-mentioned Entity are conducted in accordance with the wishes of A and 'Controls' shall be construed accordingly;

"DfE" means Department for Education;

"Further Directors" means Directors who may be appointed by the Secretary of State under the Articles of Association if a Special Measures Termination Event, as defined in the relevant Supplemental Agreement, occurs;

"LA" means the Local Authority in the area in which the relevant Academy is situated;

"Mainstream Academy" means an Academy having the characteristics referred to in clause 12;

"Memorandum" and "Articles" means the Memorandum and Articles of Association of the Company for the time being in force, a copy of the current version of which is annexed to this Agreement as Annex A;

"parents" means parents or guardians;

"persons" includes a body of persons, corporate or incorporate;

"Principal" means the head teacher of an Academy;

"Principal Regulator" means the body or person appointed as the Principal Regulator under the Charities Act 2006.

references to "school" shall where the context so admits be references to a Academy;

"SEN" means special educational needs, and the expressions "special educational needs" and "special educational provision" have the meaning set out in section 312 of the Education Act 1996;

"Special Academy" means an Academy specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with SEN;

"Supplemental Agreement" means an agreement supplemental to this Agreement, substantially in the form set out in Schedule 1 to this Agreement to be entered into by the Secretary of State and the Company pursuant to which the Company agrees to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on, and the Secretary of State agrees to fund, an Academy in accordance with the terms and conditions of that Supplemental Agreement and this Agreement;

- 7) The Interpretation Act 1978 shall apply for the interpretation of this Agreement and any Supplemental Agreement as it applies for the interpretation of an Act of Parliament.
- 8) Expressions defined in this Agreement shall have the same meaning where used in any Annex to this Agreement or Supplemental Agreement.
- 9) Questions arising on the interpretation of the arrangements in this Agreement shall be resolved by the Secretary of State after consultation with the Company
- 10) Section 1 (3) of the Academies Act 2010 states that -

(3) An Academy agreement is an agreement between the Secretary of State and the other party under which-

(a) the other party gives the undertakings in subsection (5), and

(b) the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to the other party in consideration of those undertakings."

10A) The Secretary of State acknowledges and agrees that Aston Manor Academy has already been established and that this Agreement supersedes and replaces the funding agreement dated 1st July 2011 entered into between the Secretary of State and the Aston Manor Academy in respect of Aston Manor Academy (together with the Annexes to that agreement) which, from the date of signature of this Agreement and the Supplemental Agreement entered into pursuant to it in respect of Aston Manor Academy, shall have no further effect.

LEGAL AGREEMENT

11) In consideration of the Company undertaking to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of, of a number of independent schools in England specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with SEN (**"the Special Academies"**) or having the characteristics referred to in clause 12 (**"the Mainstream Academies"**), the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to the Company in accordance with the conditions and requirements set out in this Agreement and Supplemental Agreements. If it is agreed between the Secretary of State and the Company that the Company will establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of an Academy, the parties will enter into a Supplemental Agreement in relation to that Academy. For the avoidance of doubt, any obligations imposed upon or

powers given to an Academy by this Agreement or any Supplemental Agreement are also imposed upon the Company.

CHARACTERISTICS OF A MAINSTREAM ACADEMY

12) The characteristics of a **Mainstream Academy** are as set down in Section 1A(1) of the Academies Act 2010:

- a) It is an independent school,
- b) it has a curriculum satisfying the requirements of section 78 of the Education Act 2002 (balanced and broadly based curriculum),
- c) it provides education for pupils of different abilities¹
- d) it provides education for pupils who are wholly or mainly drawn from the area in which the school is situated, and
- e) it is not an alternative provisions Academy.

THE SEN OBLIGATIONS

12A) In respect of **Special Academies**:

- a) The Company must comply with all of the obligations imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained special schools in Chapter 1 of Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 and in Regulations in force at the date of this agreement or made from time to time under any provision in that Chapter (as amended from time to time²).
- b) Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement, the Secretary of State may (whether following a complaint made to him or otherwise) direct the Company to comply with an obligation imposed by this Agreement where the Company has failed to comply with any such obligation.

¹ This clause will not apply to any Supplemental Funding Agreement entered into in relation to an Academy which is a "selective school" within the meaning of Section 6[4] of the Academies Act 2010

² Currently these duties are in section 313 (Duty to have regard to the Special Educational Needs Code of Practice 2001); section 317(5), (6) and (6A) (Duties in relation to the publication of information relating to arrangements and facilities for disabled pupils at the school); and 324(5)(b) (Duty to admit the child where a school is named in the statement); and The Education (Special Educational Needs)(Information)(England) Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/2506). For the avoidance of doubt, the obligations in paragraph 12 of this agreement are in addition to any obligations imposed upon Academy proprietors directly in legislation or regulations.

- c) The Company must ensure that each Academy's website includes details of the arrangements for the admission of disabled pupils; the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being treated less favourably than other pupils; the facilities provided to assist access to the Academy by disabled pupils; and the plan prepared by the Academy Trust under paragraph 3 of Schedule 10 to the Equality Act 2010. Disabled pupils in this paragraph mean pupils who are disabled for the purposes of the Equality Act 2010³.

CONDITIONS OF GRANT

General

13) Other conditions and requirements in respect of an Academy, unless specified otherwise in a Supplemental Agreement, are that:

- a) the school will be at the heart of its community, promoting community cohesion and sharing facilities with other schools and the wider community;
- b) there will be assessments of pupils performance as they apply to maintained schools and the opportunity to study for relevant qualifications in accordance with clause 30 (d);
- c) in respect of **Mainstream Academies**, the admissions policy and arrangements for the school will be in accordance with admissions law, and the DfE Codes of Practice, as they apply to maintained schools;
- d) teachers' levels of pay and conditions of service for all employees will be the responsibility of the Company;
- e) there will be an emphasis on the needs of the individual pupils including pupils with SEN, both those with and without statements of SEN;
- f) there will be no charge in respect of admission to the school and the school will only charge pupils where the law allows maintained schools to charge.
- g) the Company shall as soon as reasonably practicable establish an appropriate mechanism for the receipt and management of donations and shall use reasonable

³ This obligation is in addition to the obligation to comply with the duties to publish information imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained special schools set out in The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 (as amended from time to time) which paragraph 12 has the effect of imposing.

endeavours to procure donations through that mechanism for the purpose of the objects specified in the Articles.

13A Clause 13f) does not prevent the Company receiving funds from a local authority or a charity in respect of the admission of a pupil with special educational needs to an Academy.

Governance

14) Each Academy will be governed by the Company. The Company shall have regard to (but for the avoidance of doubt shall not be bound by) any guidance as to the governance of Academies that the Secretary of State may publish.

15) The Company shall establish, for each Academy, an Advisory Body, whose role shall be to provide advice to the Company in relation to the functioning of that Academy. The role of the Advisory Body and the membership of it shall be for the Company to decide, but the Company will, as a minimum, ensure that:

- a) a minimum of two parents of a pupil at the Academy (to be elected by the parents of registered pupils of the Academy) shall be a member of the Advisory Body;
- b) not used
- c) not used
- d) any advice of the Advisory Body is brought to the attention of the Directors of the Company;
- e) to the extent that the Company may, in accordance with the Articles, choose to establish a Local Governing Body, then the Company may additionally constitute the Advisory Body as the Academy's Local Governing Body.

Conduct

16) Each Academy shall be conducted in accordance with:

- a) the Articles, which shall not be amended by the Company without the written consent of the Secretary of State, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld;
- b) all provisions by or under statute which confer rights or impose obligations on Academies including, without limitation, the independent schools standards prescribed under section 157 of the Education Act 2002 to the extent they apply to the Academy

- c) the terms of this Agreement and the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

Criminal Records Bureau Checks

17) The Company shall comply with the requirements of the Education (Independent School Standards) (England) Regulations 2010 (or such regulations as may for some time being be applicable) in relation to carrying out enhanced criminal records checks, obtaining enhanced criminal records certificates and making any further checks, as required and appropriate for members of staff, supply staff, individual Directors and the Chair of the Local Governing Body.

Pupils

18) Each **Mainstream Academy** will be an all ability inclusive⁴ school whose requirements for:

- a) the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;
- b) the admission to the Academy of and support for pupils with SEN and with disabilities (for pupils who have and who do not have statements of SEN) are set out in Annex B to this Agreement;
- c) pupil exclusions are set out in regulations made by virtue of section 51A of the Education Act 2002 (as may be amended or modified from time to time, and includes any successor provisions).

18AA) Each **Special Academy** will be a special school whose requirements for:

- a) the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;
- b) pupil exclusions are set out in regulations made by virtue of section 51A of the Education Act 2002 (as may be amended or modified from time to time, and includes any successor provisions).

⁴ If one of the Mainstream Academies is a "selective school" within the meaning of Section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010 then the Supplemental Funding Agreement for that Academy will provide that that Academy is not required to be an all ability inclusive school.

Designated Teacher for Looked after Children

18A) The Company will in respect of each Academy act in accordance with, and be bound by, all relevant statutory and regulatory provisions and have regard to any guidance and codes of practice issued pursuant to such provisions, as they apply at any time to a maintained school, relating to the designation of a person to manage the teaching and learning programme for children who are looked after by an LA and are registered pupils at the school. For the purpose of this clause, any reference to the governing body of a maintained school in such statutory and regulatory provisions, or in any guidance and code of practice issued pursuant to such provisions, shall be deemed to be references to the Directors of the Company.

Teachers and other staff

19) Subject to clause 20, the Company shall not employ anyone under a contract of employment or for services to carry out planning and preparing lessons and courses for pupils, delivering lessons to pupils, assessing the development, progress and attainment of pupils, and reporting on the development, progress and attainment of pupils ("specified work") who is not either:-

- a) a qualified teacher within the meaning of regulations made under section 132 of the Education Act 2002; or
- b) otherwise eligible to do specified work under the Education (Specified Work and Registration) (England) Regulations 2003 (SI 2003/1663), which for the purpose of this clause shall be construed as if the relevant Academy were a maintained school.

20) Clause 19 does not apply to anyone who:

- a) was transferred to the employment of the Company by virtue of the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006; and
- b) immediately prior to the transfer, was employed to do specified work; and
- c) immediately prior to the transfer, was not:
 - i) a qualified teacher within the meaning of regulations made under section 132 of the Education Act 2002 and registered with full registration with the appropriate body, or

- ii) eligible to do specified work under the Education (Specified Work and Registration) (England) Regulations 2003 (SI 2003/1663)

("transferred staff member"). The Company shall use its best endeavours to ensure that any transferred staff member who undertakes specified work and does not meet the requirements of either clause 19(a) or clause 19(b) meets such requirements as soon as possible.

- 21) The Company shall ensure that all teachers employed at each Academy have access to the Teachers Pension Scheme and, in so doing, will comply with the statutory provisions underlying the scheme.
- 22) The Company shall ensure that all employees at each Academy other than teachers have access to the Local Government Pension Scheme.

Curriculum, curriculum development and delivery and RE and collective worship

- 23) The curriculum provided by each Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced.

23A) Not used.

- 23B) The Company shall publish information in relation to the current curriculum provision at each Academy. Such information shall include details relating to:

- a) the content of the curriculum;
- b) its approach to the curriculum;
- c) the GCSE option (and other Key Stage 4 qualifications) offered by each Academy;
- d) the names of any phonics or reading schemes in operation for Key Stage 1; and
- e) how parents (including prospective parents) can obtain further information in relation to the curriculum at each Academy.

- 23C) Subject to the requirements of clauses 23 to 29A, the curriculum will be the responsibility of the Academy Trust.

- 24) The Company shall ensure that the broad and balanced curriculum includes English, Mathematics and Science.

24A) Sections 42A (provision of careers guidance) and 45A (guidance as to discharge of duties) of the Education Act 1997 shall be deemed to apply to each Academy with the following modifications:

- a) each Academy shall be treated as falling within the meaning of “a school” under section 42A (2);
- b) the Company shall be deemed to be the “responsible authorities” for the purposes of subsection 42A(3); and
- c) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at each Academy

25) The Company shall make provision for the teaching of religious education and for a daily act of collective worship at each **Mainstream** Academy.

26) Where a **Mainstream Academy** is designated with a religious character⁵ in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010:

- a) subject to clause 28, and paragraph 4 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 which shall apply as if the Academy were a voluntary aided school with a religious character, the Company shall ensure that provision is made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the tenets of the specified religion or religious denomination of the Academy;
- b) subject to clause 28, the Company shall comply with the requirements of section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a foundation school with a religious character or a voluntary school, and as if references to 'the required collective worship' were references to collective worship in accordance with the tenets and practices of the specified religion or religious denomination of the Academy;
- c) the Company shall ensure that the quality of religious education given to pupils at the Academy and the contents of the Academy's collective worship given in accordance with the tenets and practice of the specific religion or religious denomination are inspected. Such inspection shall be conducted by a person chosen by the Company

⁵ Alternative provisions are available and would be potentially appropriate for non-denominational faith schools.

and the Academy shall secure that such inspection shall comply with the requirements set out in any statutory provision and regulations as if the Academy were a foundation or voluntary school which has been designated under section 69(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as having a religious character.

27) Where a **Mainstream Academy** has not been designated with a religious character in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to Section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010:

a) subject to clause 28, the Company shall ensure that provision shall be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996 and paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;

b) subject to clause 28, the Company shall ensure that the Academy complies with the requirements of section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if it were a community, foundation or voluntary school which does not have a religious character, except that the provisions of paragraph 4 of that Schedule do not apply. The Academy may apply to the Secretary of State for consent to be relieved of the requirement imposed by paragraph 3(2) of that Schedule, the Secretary of State's consent to such an application not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

c) the Company⁶:

(1) agrees that before making an application pursuant to the Religious Character of Schools (Designation Procedure) (Independent Schools) (England) Regulations 2003 for each Academy to be designated as a school with religious character it shall seek the prior written consent of the Secretary of State;

(2) hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State may in his absolute discretion refuse or consent to the Company making such an application.

28) Section 71(1) – (6) and (8) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 shall apply as if each Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if

⁶ This is required in order to ensure that the process by which an Academy becomes designated as a school with a religious character is comparable to that which applies for maintained schools.

references to “religious education” and to “religious worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by each Academy in accordance with clauses 26 or 27 as appropriate.

28A) The Company shall, so far as practical, make provision for the teaching of religious education and for acts of collective worship at each **Special Academy**.

28B) In respect of RE and collective worship at **Special Academies**:

- a) The Company shall ensure that each Special Academy complies with the requirements of regulation 5A of the Education (Special Educational Needs) (England) (Consolidation) Regulations 2001 as if it were a maintained special school.
- b) Regulation 5A of the Education (Special Educational Needs) (England) (Consolidation) Regulations 2001 shall apply as if each Special Academy were community or foundation special schools, and as if references to “Religious Education” and to “Religious Worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Special Academies.
- c) Regulation 5A of the Education (Special Educational Needs) (England) (Consolidation) Regulations 2001 shall apply as if the Academy were a community or foundation special school, and as if references to “religious education” and to “religious worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with this clause.

29) The Company shall have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State, further to section 403 of the Education Act 1996, on sex and relationship education to ensure that children at each Academy are protected from inappropriate teaching materials and they learn the nature of marriage and its importance for family life and for bringing up children. The Company shall also have regard to the requirements set out in section 405 of the Education Act 1996 which shall apply to each Academy as if it were a maintained school.

29A The Company agrees to act in accordance with Sections 406 (Political Indoctrination) and 407 (Duty to secure balance treatment of political issues) of the Education Act 1996 as if it were a maintained school, subject to the following modifications:

- a) references to any maintained school shall be treated as references to each Academy;

- b) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at each Academy;
- c) references to the governing body or the local authority shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Company; and
- d) references to the head teacher shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Principal of each Academy.

Assessment

30) The Secretary of State will notify the appropriate body for assessment purposes about each Academy.

- a) The Company shall ensure that the Academy complies with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time to ensure that pupils take part in assessments and in teacher assessments of pupil's performance as they apply to maintained schools.
- b) The Company shall report to any body on assessments under clause 30 as the Secretary of State shall prescribe and shall provide such information as may be required by that body as applies to maintained schools.
- c) In respect of all Key Stages, the Company will submit each Academy to monitoring and moderation of its assessment arrangements as prescribed by the Secretary of State.
- d) The Company may not offer courses at any Academy which lead to relevant qualifications, as defined in section 96 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000, unless the Secretary of State gives specific approval for such courses.

30A) The Company shall ensure that the following information is published on the website for each **Mainstream Academy**:

- a) The school's most recent key stage 2 results as published by the Secretary of State under the following column headings in the School Performance Tables published on the Department for Education's website:

(i) "% achieving Level 4 or above in English and Maths";

(ii) "% making expected progress";

- (iii) in relation to English, “% achieving Level 5 or above”; and
 - (iv) in relation to Maths, “% achieving Level 5 or above”.
- b) The school’s most recent key stage 4 results as published by the Secretary of State under the following column headings in the School Performance Tables published on the Department for Education’s website:
- (i) “% achieving 5 + A* - C GCSEs (or equivalent) including English or Maths GCSEs”;
 - (ii) “% achieving the English Baccalaureate”; and
 - (iii) “% of pupils making expected progress”.
- c) Information as to where and by what means parents (including prospective parents) may access the most recent report about the school published by her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education, Children’s Services and Skills.
- d) Information as to where and by what means parents (including prospective parents) may access the School Performance Tables published by the Secretary of State on the Department for Education’s website.

Exclusions Agreement

- 31) In respect of **Mainstream Academies**, the Company shall, if invited to do so by an LA, enter into an agreement in respect of an Academy with that LA, which has the effect that where:
- a) the Company admits a pupil to the Academy who has been permanently excluded from a maintained school, the Academy itself or another Academy with whom the LA has a similar agreement; or
 - b) the Company permanently excludes a pupil from the Academy payment will flow between the Company and the LA in the same direction and for the same amount that it would, were the Academy a maintained school, under Regulations made under section 47 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 relating to the addition or deduction of a maintained school’s budget following a permanent exclusion or the admission of a permanently excluded pupil. At the date of this Agreement, the applicable Regulation is Regulation 23 of the School Finance (England) Regulations 2011.

School Meals

- 32) The Company shall, if requested to do so by or on behalf of any pupils at any Academy, provide school lunches for those pupils unless it would be unreasonable for it to do so. Subject to the provisions of clause 33 charges may be levied for lunches, but the Company shall otherwise fund the cost of such school lunches from its GAG.
- 33) In relation to a pupil who is himself or whose parents are in receipt of benefits mentioned in section 512ZB of the Education Act 1996 (or equivalent provision governing the entitlement to free school lunches of pupils at maintained schools), the Company shall ensure that a school lunch is provided for such a pupil free of charge to be funded out of the Company's GAG.

Charging

- 34) Sections 402 (Obligation to enter pupils for public examinations), 450 - 457 (charges), 459 (regulations about information about charges and school hours) and 460 (voluntary contributions), 461 (recovery of sums as civil debt) - 462 (Interpretation re charges) of the Education Act 1996 (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any secondary legislation made further to those provisions) shall be deemed to apply to each Academy with the following modifications:
- a) references to any maintained school shall be treated as references to an Academy;
 - b) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at an Academy;
 - c) references to the governing body or the local education authority shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Company;
 - d) the charging and remissions policies required to be determined under section 457, and any amendment thereto, shall require the approval of the Secretary of State; and
 - e) the Company may charge persons who are not registered pupils at an Academy for education provided or for facilities used by them at that Academy.

International Education Surveys

- 34A The Secretary of State may, by notice in writing to the Company, require the Company to participate in an international education survey and the Company shall, upon receipt of such notice, participate in that survey and provide to the Secretary of State or to those

carrying out the survey all such assistance and information as may reasonably be required for the purposes of the Academy's participation in that survey.

Pupil Premium

34B The Company shall publish in each Academy Financial Year information in relation to:

- a) the amount of Pupil Premium allocation that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
- b) on what it intends to spend the Pupil Premium allocation;
- c) on what it spent its Pupil Premium in the previous Academy Financial Year;
- d) the impact in educational attainment, arising from expenditure of the previous Academy Financial Year's Pupil Premium.

DURATION OF SCHOOL DAY AND YEAR

34C) In respect of **Mainstream Academies**, the duration of the school day and year will be the responsibility of the Company.⁷

GRANTS TO BE PAID BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE

General

35) The Secretary of State shall pay grants towards Capital and Recurrent Expenditure for each Academy. Except with the Secretary of State's prior agreement, the Company shall not budget for its expenditure in any Academy Financial Year in excess of expected income. The Company shall not enter into commitments which are likely to have substantial implications for future levels of grant, or for the period for which grant may be required. No decision by the Company shall commit the Secretary of State to paying any particular amount of grant.

36) "Recurrent Expenditure" means any expenditure on the establishment, conduct, administration and maintenance of the Academy which does not fall within the categories of capital expenditure set out at clause 37. The Secretary of State shall pay two

⁷ In respect of Special Academies, regulations made under section 551 of the Education Act 1996 apply (currently the Education (School Day and School Year) (England) Regulations 1999).

separate and distinct grants in respect of recurrent expenditure: General Annual Grant ("GAG") and Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG").

Capital Grant

37) "Capital Expenditure" means expenditure on:

- a) the acquisition of land and buildings;
- b) the erection, enlargement, improvement or demolition of any building including fixed plant, installation, wall, fence or other structure, or any playground or hard standing;
- c) the installation of electrical, mechanical or other services other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- d) the purchase of vehicles and other self-propelled mechanical equipment;
- e) the installation and equipping of premises with furnishings and equipment, other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- f) the installation and equipping of premises with computers, networking for computers, operating software and information and communication technology equipment, other than necessary updates or necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- g) the provision and equipping of premises, including playing fields and other facilities for social activities and physical recreation other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- h) works of a permanent character other than the purchase or replacement of minor day-to day items;
- i) any major repairs or replacements which are specified as constituting capital expenditure in any grant letter relating to them;
- j) such other items (whether of a like or dissimilar nature to any of the foregoing) of a substantial or enduring nature as the Secretary of State may agree shall constitute capital expenditure for the purposes of this Agreement;
- k) all professional fees properly and reasonably incurred in connection with the provision of any of the above;

l) VAT and other taxes payable on any of the above.

“Capital Grant” means grant paid to the Company in respect of Capital Expenditure.

- 38) Where an Academy is to open in new premises, or where existing premises are to be substantially refurbished or remodelled to enable the Academy to open in such premises, the Secretary of State, may, in his absolute discretion be responsible for meeting the incurred Capital Expenditure for that Academy. To that end, the Secretary of State will consider providing funding in accordance with any arrangements as he considers appropriate.
- 39) Any Capital Expenditure incurred in respect of each Academy on which Capital Grant payments are sought from the Secretary of State will require the specific prior written agreement of the Secretary of State, which agreement shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
- 40) Any payment of Capital Grant to the Company under this Agreement is subject to the fulfilment of the following conditions:
- a) such grants are used solely to defray expenditure approved by the Secretary of State;
 - b) the Company certifying and providing evidence that all planning and other consents necessary for the development and all related infrastructure to be completed have been obtained or put in place.
 - c) Any other conditions that the Secretary of State may specify.

Arrangements for Payment of Capital Grant

- 41) Capital Grant will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company on the basis of claims for grant submitted to the Secretary of State in the notified format with supporting invoices and certificates as required by the Secretary of State. If a dispute arises as to whether a claim is or is not acceptable both parties undertake to attempt to resolve it in good faith. In the event of such a dispute, the Secretary of State shall pay to the Company so much of the claim as shall not be in dispute.

General Annual Grant

- 42) Clauses 42A to 54 apply in respect of **Mainstream Academies** only.

42A) GAG will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company in order to cover the normal running costs of each **Mainstream** Academy. These will include, but are not limited to:

- a) teachers' salaries and related costs (including full and part time teaching staff and seconded teachers);
- b) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, educational support staff, administrative and clerical staff and manual and premises related staff);
- c) employees' expenses;
- d) the purchase, maintenance, repair and replacement:
 - (i) of teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books, stationery and ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
 - (ii) of other supplies and services;
- e) examination fees;
- f) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewage; fuel and light (including fuel oil, solid and other fuel, electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- g) insurance, provided that the Secretary of State shall not be obliged to pay GAG in relation to insurance to the extent that insurance and/or comparable arrangements are made available to the Company (whether at a cost to the Company or otherwise and whether made available by and/or on behalf of the Secretary of State or otherwise) save that, to the extent that such insurance and/or comparable arrangements as may be made available constitute a cost for the Company, the Secretary of State shall provide a contribution through GAG in relation to such cost;
- h) medical equipment and supplies;
- i) staff development (including in-service training);
- j) curriculum development;

- k) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school meals to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with special educational needs or disabilities (taking account of the fact that separate additional money will be available for pupils with statements of special educational needs);
 - l) administration;
 - m) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.
- 43) Subject to clauses to 51-52, GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Mainstream Academy** will include;
- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and notified in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent, taking account of the number of pupils at each Academy;
 - b) funding in respect of functions which would be carried out by the LA if each Academy was a maintained school.
- 44) The GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Mainstream Academy** will also include, payable on a basis equivalent to that applied to maintained schools:
- n) funding for matters for which it is necessary for that Academy to incur extra costs, for as long as those costs are deemed necessary by the Secretary of State; and
 - o) payments in respect of further, specific grants made available to maintained schools, where the relevant Academy meets the requisite conditions and criteria necessary for a maintained school to receive these grants.
- 45) Subject to clause 47, the basis of the pupil number count for the purposes of determining GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which a **Mainstream Academy** opens shall be the same basis as that used by the Local Authority for determining the budget share of the predecessor maintained school as adjusted by numbers counted in any subsequent Schools Census, as determined by the Secretary of State. In subsequent years the basis of the pupil count will be as determined by the Secretary of State.

- 46) Subject to clause 47 the basis of the pupil number count for the purpose of determining GAG for a **Mainstream Academy** for Academy Financial Years after the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens will be:
- a) for the pupil number count for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
 - b) for the pupil number count for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which for the time being is in use for maintained schools for the calculation of pupil numbers for pupils in Year 12 and above for the purpose of calculating their level of funding.
- 47) Where either of the following conditions applies in respect of an Academy Financial Year, the basis of the pupil count shall be determined by the Secretary of State, taking account of any diseconomies of scale that the Academy will be under as a result of such condition(s) applying. The conditions are:
- a) not all planned Year-groups will be present at the Academy (that is, not all the pupil cohorts relevant to the age-range of the Academy will have some pupils present); or
 - b) the total number of pupils as measured in the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question is less than 90% of the planned final size of the Academy, as specified in the Academy's Supplemental Agreement, and has not at any previous time been greater than 90% of that number.
- 48) For any Academy Financial Year in which GAG for a **Mainstream Academy** has been calculated in accordance with clause 45, no adjustment shall be made to the following Academy Financial Year's formula funding element of GAG for that Academy to recognise variation from the pupil count basis used.
- 49) For any Academy Financial Year in which GAG for a **Mainstream Academy** is calculated in accordance with clause 46, no adjustment will be made to the formula funding element in the following Academy Financial Year's formula funding element of GAG unless the Company demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that there has been a significant impact on costs, such as an extra class. For any other element of GAG the Secretary of State may make adjustments to recognise a variation in pupil numbers from that used to calculate the element of grant in question; the basis of these will be set out in the annual letter of funding.

50) The Secretary of State recognises that:

- a) in relation to **Mainstream Academies** which open with intakes representing only a proportion of the final planned size of the Academy, payments based simply upon the number of pupils present are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs in the Academy Financial Years before all age groups are present at their planned size (the "Start-up Period") because of a lack of economies of scale. The Secretary of State may pay an appropriately larger GAG in the Start-up Period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 43-49, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively⁸;
- b) in relation to **Mainstream Academies** which open with pupils transferred from one or more maintained schools which have closed, additional GAG resources may be required to take account of transitional costs including any costs associated with supporting the integration of pupils from the closed schools and, where necessary, to offer a dual curriculum. If the Secretary of State has indicated that such additional GAG will be payable, the Company will make a bid for this addition to GAG based upon need and providing appropriate supporting evidence.

51) During the Start-up Period or during the period when year groups are present who have transferred from a predecessor school or schools, the Secretary of State will pay a further element of GAG additional to that calculated in accordance with the methods set out in clauses 43-49 to allow the relevant **Mainstream Academy** to:

- a) purchase a basic stock of teaching and learning materials (including library books, text books, software, stationery, science equipment and equipment for physical education) and other consumable materials;
- b) meet the costs associated with the recruitment and induction of additional teaching and other staff.

After the Start-up Period these costs will be met through the ordinary GAG.

52) The Secretary of State recognises that if he serves notice of intention to terminate a Supplemental Agreement under that agreement the intake of new pupils during the notice period is likely to decline and that in such circumstances payments based simply

⁸ Note that a larger GAG for the Start-Up Period is only applicable to Academies with approved Expressions of Interest.

upon the number of pupils attending the relevant **Mainstream Academy** are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs during the notice period. The Secretary of State undertakes to pay a reasonable and appropriately larger GAG with respect to that Academy in the notice period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 43-49, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

53) The Secretary of State also recognises that if this Agreement or a Supplemental Agreement is terminated for any reason by either party the number of pupils at the relevant **Mainstream Academy or Academies** is likely to decline. In these circumstances both parties undertake to attempt to resolve issues arising from such termination in good faith and with the aim of protecting the interests and the education of the pupils at the Academy.

54) Subject to clause 73, GAG paid by the Secretary of State in respect of a **Mainstream Academy** shall only be spent by the Company towards the normal running costs of that Academy.

54AAA) Clauses 54AA to 54H apply in respect of **Special Academies** only.

54AA) GAG will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company as a contribution towards the normal running costs of each **Special Academy**. These will include, but are not limited to:

- p) teachers' salaries and related costs (including full and part time teaching staff and seconded teachers);
- q) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, educational support staff, administrative and clerical staff and manual and premises related staff);
- r) employees' expenses;
- s) the purchase, maintenance, repair and replacement:
 - (i) of teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books, stationery and ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
 - (ii) of other supplies and services;
- t) examination fees;

- u) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewage; fuel and light (including fuel oil, solid and other fuel, electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
 - v) insurance, provided that the Secretary of State shall not be obliged to pay GAG in relation to insurance to the extent that insurance and/or comparable arrangements are made available to the Company (whether at a cost to the Company or otherwise and whether made available by and/or on behalf of the Secretary of State or otherwise) save that, to the extent that such insurance and/or comparable arrangements as may be made available constitute a cost for the Company, the Secretary of State shall provide a contribution through GAG in relation to such cost;
 - w) medical equipment and supplies;
 - x) staff development (including in-service training);
 - y) curriculum development;
 - z) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school meals to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with special educational needs or disabilities (taking account of the fact that separate additional money will be available for pupils with statements of special educational needs);
 - aa) administration;
 - bb) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.
- 54A) Subject to clauses 54E – 54F, GAG for each Financial Year for each **Special Academy** will include:
- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained special school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and notified in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent, taking account of the number of pupils at each Academy;
 - b) funding in respect of functions which would be carried out by the LA if each Academy was a maintained special school.

54B) The GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Special Academy** will also include, payable on a basis equivalent to that applied to maintained special schools:

- a) funding for matters for which it is necessary for that Academy to incur extra costs, for as long as those costs are deemed necessary by the Secretary of State; and
- b) payments in respect of further, specific grants made available to maintained special schools, where the relevant Academy meets the requisite conditions and criteria necessary for a maintained school to receive these grants.

54C) The Secretary of State will determine GAG for each Special Academy for each Academy Funding Year. The determinations will be made taking into account relevant factors. Arrangements for this will be set out in the Annual Letter of funding or its equivalent.

54D) The Secretary of State may make provision, within his absolute discretion, for GAG to be adjusted in-year if the number of pupils attending the relevant academy at specified dates exceeds or falls below thresholds specified by letter. Arrangements for this will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding.

54E) The Secretary of State recognises that a larger GAG may be appropriate to meet additional costs during the start-up period, and may pay start-up grant, on a basis determined by him, during that period, the length of which will be stipulated in the Annual Letter of Funding⁹.

54F) The Secretary of State recognises that if he serves notice of intention to terminate a Supplemental Agreement, the intake of new pupils during the notice period is likely to decline and that in such circumstances payments based on a number of places related to the number of pupils attending the relevant **Special Academy** are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs during the notice period. The Secretary of State undertakes to pay a reasonable and appropriately larger GAG with respect to that Academy in the notice period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 54A-54C, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

54G) The Secretary of State also recognises that if this Agreement or a Supplemental Agreement is terminated for any reason by either party the number of pupils at the

⁹ Note that a larger GAG for the Start-Up Period is only applicable to Academies with approved Expressions of Interest.

relevant **Special Academy or Academies** is likely to decline. In these circumstances both parties undertake to attempt to resolve issues arising from such termination in good faith and with the aim of protecting the interests and the education of the pupils at the Academy.

54H) GAG paid by the Secretary of State in respect of a **Special Academy** shall only be spent by the Company towards the normal running costs of that Academy.

Earmarked Annual Grant

55) Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG") shall be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company in respect of either recurrent or Capital Expenditure for such specific purposes as may from time to time be agreed between the Secretary of State and the Company and as described in the relevant funding letter. The Company shall only spend EAG in accordance with the scope, terms and conditions of the grant set out in the relevant funding letter.

56) Where the Company is seeking a specific EAG in relation to any Academy Financial Year, it shall submit a letter outlining its proposals and the reasons for its request to Academies Division, Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT.

Arrangements for Payment of GAG and EAG

57) The Secretary of State shall notify the Company at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year of the GAG and EAG figures in respect of each Academy which, subject to Parliamentary approval, the Secretary of State plans for that Academy Financial Year and of the assumptions and figures on which these are based.

58) If GAG or EAG is calculated incorrectly due to a mistake of the Secretary of State then:

- a) if this leads to an underpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State will correct the underpayment in subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) if this leads to an overpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State reserves the right to recover any overpaid grant in subsequent Academy Financial Years, as appropriate, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Company.

59) If GAG or EAG is calculated incorrectly because the Company provides incorrect information to the Secretary of State then;

- a) if this leads to an underpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State may correct the underpayment in subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) If this leads to an overpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State reserves the right to recover any overpaid grant in subsequent Academy Financial Years, as appropriate, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Company.
- 60) The amounts of GAG for an Academy Financial Year will be determined annually by the Secretary of State. The amount of GAG for each Academy for the initial Academy Financial Year will be notified to the Company in a funding letter at a date preceding that year. For subsequent years the amount of GAG will be notified to the Company in a funding letter preceding that Academy Financial Year (the "Annual Letter of Funding"). The Annual Letter of Funding will not include the amount that the Company will receive in respect of grants for which information to enable timely calculation is not available or is incomplete, such grants will be notified as soon as practicable later in the year. Amounts of EAG will be notified to the Company wherever possible in the Annual Letter of Funding or as soon as practicable thereafter.
- 61) The Secretary of State undertakes to pay GAG in monthly instalments on or before the twenty fifth day of each month, each such instalment to fund the salaries and other payroll costs for the relevant month of all monthly paid employees and all other costs payable during the next following month. The detailed arrangements for payment will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding.

Other relevant funding

- 62) ¹⁰Not used.
- 63) The Secretary of State may meet costs incurred by the Company in connection with the transfer of employees from any predecessor school under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Payment of grant in respect of such costs is to be agreed between the parties on a case by case basis and the Company shall not budget on the basis that it will receive any grant in respect of such costs unless it is specifically notified that such grant will be paid.

¹⁰ NOTE. For Academies with approved Expressions of Interest see appropriate wording to be included as set out in Section B of the Appendix below.

64) The Company may also receive funding from an LA in respect of the provision detailed in statements of SEN for pupils attending an Academy in accordance with the provisions of Section 483A of the Education Act 1996 and regulations made under that section. The Company shall ensure that all provision detailed in statements of SEN is provided for such pupils.

65) Not used

FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS

General

66) The Company shall appoint an Accounting Officer and shall notify the Secretary of State of that appointment.

67) In relation to the use of grant paid to the Company by the Secretary of State, the Company shall abide by the requirements of and have regard to the guidance in the Academies Financial Handbook published by the DfE and amended from time to time and as modified to take account of the fact that the Company manages more than one Academy, which sets out in detail provisions for the financial management of each Academy including guidance on financial systems and controls and accounting and reporting requirements, in so far as these are not inconsistent with any accounting and reporting requirements and guidance that it may be subject to by virtue of its being a charity.

68) The formal budget plan must be approved each Academy Financial Year by the Directors of the Company.

69) Any payment of grant by the Secretary of State in respect of each Academy is subject to his being satisfied as to the fulfilment by the Company of the following conditions:

- a) in its conduct and operation it shall apply financial and other controls which conform to the requirements both of propriety and of good financial management;
- b) arrangements have been made to maintain proper accounting records and that statements of income and expenditure and balance sheets may be produced in such form and frequency as the Secretary of State may from time to time reasonably direct;

- c) in addition to the obligation to fulfil the statutory requirements referred to in sub-clause f) below, the Company shall prepare its financial statements, Directors' report, Annual Accounts and its Annual Return for each Academy Financial Year in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt Charity and/or in such form or manner and by such date as the Secretary of State may reasonably direct and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator each Academy Financial Year;
 - d) a statement of the accounting policies used should be sent to the Secretary of State with the financial statements and should carry an audit report stating that, in the opinion of the auditors, the statements show a true and fair view of the Company's affairs and that the grants were used for the purposes intended;
 - e) the Company shall ensure that its accounts are audited annually by independent auditors appointed under arrangements approved by the Secretary of State;
 - f) the Company prepares and files with the Companies Registry such annual accounts as are required by the Companies Act 2006;
 - g) the Company shall publish on its website its Annual Accounts, Annual Report, Memorandum and Articles of Association, Funding Agreement and a list of the names of the Directors of the Company;
 - h) the Company insures or procures insurance by another person of its assets in accordance with normal commercial practice or under the terms of any subsisting leases in respect of the leasehold interest of the site upon which each Academy is situated;
- 70) In addition, and at his expense, the Secretary of State may instruct auditors to report to him on the adequacy and effectiveness of the accounting systems and internal controls maintained by the Company to standards determined by the Secretary of State and to make recommendations for improving the financial management of the Company.
- 71) The books of accounts and all relevant records, files and reports of the Company including those relating to financial controls, shall be open at all reasonable times to officials of the DfE and the National Audit Office and to contractors retained by the DfE or the National Audit Office for inspection or the carrying out of value for money studies; and the Company shall secure that those officials and contractors are given reasonable assistance with their enquiries. For the purposes of this clause 'relevant' means in any

way relevant to the provision and use of grants provided by the Secretary of State under this Agreement.

72) The Company shall submit indicative budgets relating to each Academy to the Secretary of State by not later than 15 February before the start of each Academy Financial Year. Such budgets shall set out clearly the prospective income and expenditure of the relevant Academy and shall differentiate, and give adequate details of:

- a) a statement of expected income for that Academy Financial Year including cash donations and gifts in kind from sources other than GAG, EAG and grants from the Secretary of State towards capital and revenue expenditure, distinguishing between income from public funds including the national lottery and income from other sources. Income from cash donations and gifts in kind from sources other than GAG, EAG and grants from the Secretary of State towards capital expenditure will not be taken into account by the Secretary of State in the calculation of GAG;
- b) a statement of proposed recurrent expenditure for that Academy Financial Year;
- c) a statement of proposed capital expenditure for that Academy Financial Year.

73) At the beginning of any Academy Financial Year the Company may hold unspent GAG for any Academy from previous Academy Financial Years amounting to such percentage (if any) as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company prior to the beginning of that Academy Financial Year of the total GAG payable for the Academy in the Academy Financial Year just ended or such higher amount as may from time to time be agreed. The Company shall use such carried forward amount for such purpose, or subject to such restriction on its use, as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company.

74) Notwithstanding clause 73 any additional grant provided over and above that set out in clauses 43-49 and made in accordance with clauses 50-52 may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the Start-up Period or the circumstances set out in clause 52 come to an end.

75) Any savings of GAG not allowed to be carried forward under clauses 73-74 will be taken into account in the payment of subsequent grant.

76) The Company may also accumulate funds from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State for application to the benefit of an Academy as it sees fit. Any surplus arising from private sources or public sources other than grants

from the Secretary of State shall be separately identified in the Company's balance sheet.

77) The Company shall not, in relation to assets or property funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed:

- a) except such as are given in normal contractual relations, give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort;
- b) write off any debts or liabilities owed to it above a value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State nor offer to make any ex gratia payments;
- c) make any sale or purchase of freehold property; or
- d) grant or take up any leasehold or tenancy agreement for a term exceeding three years.

78) The Company shall provide 30 days notice to the Secretary of State, whether or not the circumstances require the Secretary of State's consent, of its intention to:

- a) give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort;
- b) write off any debts owed to it or offer to make any ex gratia payments;
- c) make any sale or purchase of freehold property; or
- d) grant or take up any leasehold or tenancy agreement for a term exceeding three years.

79) Each discovered loss of an amount exceeding the amount for the time being specified by the Secretary of State and arising from suspected theft or fraud, shall be reported by the Company to the Secretary of State at the earliest opportunity.

80) It is the responsibility of the Company to ensure that each Academy balances its budget from Academy Financial Year to Academy Financial Year. For the avoidance of doubt, this does not prevent the Company from:

- a) carrying a surplus from one Academy Financial Year to the next; or
- b) carrying forward from a previous Academy Financial Year or Academy Financial Years a sufficient surplus or sufficient cumulative surpluses on grants from the

Secretary of State to meet an in-year deficit on such grants in a subsequent financial year; or

- c) incurring an in-year deficit on funds from sources other than grants from the Secretary of State in any Academy Financial Year, provided it does not affect the Company's responsibility to ensure that the Company balances its overall budget from Academy Financial Year to Academy Financial Year.

80A The Company shall abide by the requirements of and have regard to the Charity Commission's guidance to charities and charity trustees and in particular the Charity Commission's guidance in the Protecting Charities from Harm ('the compliance toolkit'). Any references in this document which require charity trustees to report to the Charity Commission should instead be interpreted as references to report to the Principal Regulator.

Borrowing Powers

- 81) The Company shall not borrow against or so as to put at risk property or assets funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State without specific approval of the Secretary of State, such approval may only be granted in limited circumstances. The Company shall not operate an overdraft except to cover irregularities in cash flow. Such an overdraft, and the maximum amount to be borrowed, shall require approval by the Company in General Meeting and in writing by the Secretary of State, and shall be subject to any conditions which the Secretary of State may reasonably impose.
- 82) The Company shall provide 30 days notice to the Secretary of State of its intention to borrow, whether or not such borrowing requires the Secretary of State's approval under clause 81 above.

Disposal of Assets

- 83) Where the Company acquires assets for a nil consideration or at an under value it shall be treated for the purpose of this Agreement as having incurred expenditure equal to the market value of those assets at the time that they were acquired. This provision shall not apply to assets transferred to the Company at nil or nominal consideration and which were previously used for the purposes of an Academy and/or were transferred from an LA, the value of which assets shall be disregarded.
- 84) The sale or disposal by other means, or reinvestment of proceeds from the disposal, of a capital asset by the Company shall require the consent of the Secretary of State, such

consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed, where:

a) the Secretary of State paid capital grant in excess of the value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State for the asset; or

b) the asset was transferred to the Company from an LA for no or nominal consideration.

85) Furthermore, reinvestment of a percentage of the proceeds of disposal of a capital asset paid for with a capital grant from the Secretary of State shall require the Secretary of State's consent in the circumstances set out above and reinvestment exceeding the value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State or with other special features will be subject to Parliamentary approval. The percentage of the proceeds for which consent is needed is the percentage of the initial price of the asset which was paid by capital grant from the Secretary of State.

86) This clause applies in the event, during the lifetime of this Agreement, of the disposal of a capital asset for which capital grant of any amount was paid by the Secretary of State, where the asset was acquired by the Company. In this event, the Company shall repay to the Secretary of State the same proportion of the proceeds of the disposal as equates with the proportion of the original cost met by the Secretary of State, unless the Secretary of State agrees to some or all of the proceeds being retained by the Company for its charitable purposes.

87) This clause applies in the event, during the lifetime of this Agreement, that the Secretary of State consents to the disposal of an asset which was transferred to the Company from an LA for no or nominal consideration. In this event the Secretary of State may give consent on the basis that all or part of the proceeds of the disposal should be made over to the LA from which the asset was transferred, taking into account the amount of the proceeds to be reinvested by the Company. The Secretary of State will have regard to any representations from the Company and the LA from which the asset was transferred before giving consent under this clause.

88) Except with the consent of the Secretary of State, the Company shall not dispose of assets funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State for a consideration less than the best price that can reasonably be obtained, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

89) The Company shall provide 30 days notice to the Secretary of State of its intention to dispose of assets for a consideration less than the best price that can reasonably be

obtained, whether or not such disposal requires the Secretary of State's consent under clause 88 above.

TERMINATION

90) This Agreement shall commence on the date hereof and continue until terminated in accordance with clause 91 or until all Supplemental Agreements have terminated.

91) The Secretary of State may at any time by notice in writing terminate this Agreement and each of the Supplemental Agreements forthwith on the occurrence of any of the following events:-

a) the Company calls a meeting of its creditors (whether formal or informal) or enters into any composition or arrangement (whether formal or informal) with its creditors; or

b) the Company proposes a voluntary arrangement within Section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (as amended); or

c) the Company is unable to pay its debts within the meaning of Section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986 provided that, for the purposes of this Clause, Section 123 (1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 shall have effect as if the amount of £10,000 was substituted for £750. The Company shall not be deemed unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this clause if any such demand as is mentioned in the said Section is being contested in good faith by the Company; or

d) the Company has a receiver and manager (with the exception of Receivers and Managers or Interim Managers appointed by the Charity Commission under the Charities Act 1993 or any subsequent re-enactment of that Act), administrator or administrative receiver appointed over all or any part of its undertakings, assets or income; or

e) any distraint, execution or other process is levied or enforced on any of the Company's property and is not paid out, withdrawn or discharged within fifteen Business Days; or

f) the Company has passed a resolution for its winding up; or

g) an order is made for the winding up or administration of the Company.

The Company shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as possible after receiving any petition which may result in an order for the winding up or administration of the Company

and shall provide an explanation to the Secretary of State of the circumstances giving rise to the service of such a petition.

92) If, following the exercise of the Secretary of State's powers to appoint Additional Directors or Further Directors, pursuant to the Articles of Association the Members pass an ordinary or special resolution to remove one or more of those Additional or Further Directors appointed by the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State may give the Company 12 months, or such lesser period as he considers appropriate in the circumstances, written notice to terminate this Agreement or, as the Secretary of State may in his absolute discretion decide any of the Supplemental Funding Agreement's.

93) The Secretary of State's right to terminate this Agreement under clause 92 shall cease if he removes any of the Additional Directors or Further Directors which he has appointed pursuant to the Articles of Association.

Change of Control of the Company

93A) The Secretary of State may at any time by notice in writing, subject to clause 93C) below, terminate this Agreement forthwith (or on such other date as he may in his absolute discretion determine) in the event that there is a change:

(a) in the Control of the Company;

(b) in the Control of a legal entity that Controls the Company.

Provided that where a person ('P') is a member or director of the body corporate (as a corporation sole or otherwise) by virtue of an office, no change of Control arises merely by P's successor becoming a member or director in P's place.

93B) The Company shall, as soon as it is reasonably practicable to do so after it has become aware of any change or proposed change of Control within the meaning of clause 93A), give written notice to the Secretary of State of such change or proposed change of Control.

93C) When notifying the Secretary of State further to clause 93B), the Company may seek the Secretary of State's agreement that, if he is satisfied that the person assuming Control is suitable, he will not in those circumstances exercise his right to terminate this Agreement further to clause 93A).

Effect of Termination

94) In the event of the termination of this Agreement however occurring the Secretary of

State shall procure that his nominee (if any) shall resign as a member of the Company and shall co-operate in making any associated amendments to the Articles of Association.

GENERAL

Information

95) Without prejudice to any other provision of this Agreement, the Secretary of State acting reasonably may from time to time call for information on, inter alia, any Academy's:

- a) curriculum;
- b) arrangements for the assessment of pupils;
- c) teaching staff including numbers, qualifications, experience, salaries, and teaching loads;
- d) class sizes;
- e) outreach work with other schools and the local community;
- f) operation of the admission criteria and over subscription arrangements for the Academy including numbers of applications for places and the number and characteristics of pupils accepted for admission – for Mainstream Academies only;
- g) numbers of pupils excluded (including permanent and fixed term exclusions);
- h) levels of authorised and unauthorised attendance;
- i) charging and remissions policies and the operation of those policies;
- j) organisation, operation and building management;
- k) financial controls; and
- l) membership and proceedings of the Company and the Local Governing Body.

96) The Company shall make such information available to the Secretary of State, in such form and manner and at such times as may reasonably be required. The Secretary of State shall provide the Company with such information as it may reasonably require of him for the running of an Academy.

Access by the Secretary of State's Officers

97) The Company shall allow access to the premises of any Academy at any reasonable time to DfE officials. All records, files and reports relating to the running of the Company and each Academy shall be available to them at any reasonable time. The Company shall provide the Secretary of State in advance with papers relating to each Academy prepared for meetings of the Local Governing Body, of the Company's directors and of the members of the Company. Two DfE officials shall be entitled to attend and to speak at all such meetings, but shall withdraw from any discussion of an Academy's or the Company's relationship with the Secretary of State or any discussion of bids for funding to the Secretary of State. The Company shall take any steps which are required to secure its compliance with the obligations imposed by this clause of this Agreement.

98) The Company shall ensure that:

- a) the agenda for every meeting of the relevant Local Governing Body and the Company's directors;
- b) the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the person acting as chairman of that meeting;
- c) the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
- d) any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting, are made available for inspection by any interested party at the relevant Academy and, as soon as is reasonably practicable, sent to the Secretary of State.

99) There may be excluded from any item required to be made available for inspection by any interested party and to be sent to the Secretary of State by virtue of clause 98, any material relating to:

- a) a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at any Academy;
- b) a named pupil at, or candidate for admission to, any Academy; and
- c) any matter which, by reason of its nature, the Company is satisfied should remain confidential.

Notices

- 100) Any notice or other communication concerning this Agreement or a Supplemental Agreement shall be sent, in the case of a notice or communication from the Secretary of State to the Company at its registered office or such other addressee/address as may be notified in writing from time to time by the Company and, in the case of a notice or communication from the Company to the Secretary of State to Head of Academies Division, Department for Education, Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT; or such other address as may be notified from time to time by the Secretary of State and where any such notice or communication is sent by post, unless the contrary is proved, it shall be deemed, subject to satisfactory proof of posting, to be effected at the time at which the letter would be received in the ordinary course of post.
- 101) The service by the Secretary of State of a notice of termination of a Supplemental Agreement shall not prejudice the ability of the Company (if it wishes to do so) during the notice period to admit pupils to the relevant Academy in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement and the relevant Supplemental Agreement and to receive GAG and EAG in respect of them.

Appointment of Additional or Further Directors by the Secretary of State

- 102) The Secretary of State undertakes to the Company not to exercise the powers under the Articles to appoint Additional Directors or Further Directors in the following circumstances:-
- a) if the matters giving rise to the appointment of the Additional or Further Directors relate, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, to the affairs of only one Academy; and
 - b) if the Company has delegated, and continues to delegate, to a Local Governing Body of such Academy all decisions and powers that the Secretary of State reasonably considers are necessary to enable such Local Governing Body to address the matters that gave rise to the appointment of the Additional or Further Directors and to ensure that the relevant Local Governing Body is capable of properly conducting the affairs of the relevant Academy on the Company's behalf.; and
 - c) if the Company replaces such members of the Local Governing Body and/or appoints additional members of that Local Governing Body as, in either case, the Secretary of State may by notice in writing to the Company specify; and

d) provided that such delegation is not subsequently revoked or, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, varied in any material respect.

Complaints

102A) If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part prior to the opening of any Academy, as referred to in clause 2.4 of the relevant supplemental agreement, and all or part of that complaint was being or had been investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III or the Local Government Act 1974 ('Part III') or that complaint in whole or in part could have been investigated under Part III had the school the Academy replaced remained a maintained school, the Company:

- a) will abide by the provisions of Part III as though the Academy were a maintained school;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State shall have the power to investigate the matter complained of as if it had taken place after conversion;
- c) agrees to act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as though that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school.

102B) If the Secretary of State could have given an order and/or a direction under section 496 and/or section 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 2.4 of the relevant supplemental agreement) and that order and/or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately prior to conversion, the Company agrees:

- a) the Secretary of State may give orders and/or directions to the Company as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school;
- b) to act in accordance with any such order and/or direction from the Secretary of State.

General

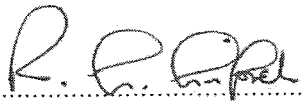
103) This Agreement shall not be assignable by the Company.

104) The Secretary of State and the Company recognise the difficulties in catering in this Agreement and the Supplemental Agreements for all the circumstances which may arise in relation to the Academies and undertake in good faith to conduct such consultations as may from time to time be desirable in order to promote the interests of the Academies throughout the currency of this Agreement.

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

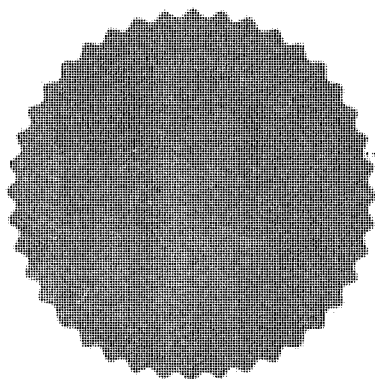
4/9/ 2012

Executed on behalf of Equitas Academies Trust by:


Director


Director/Secretary

The Corporate Seal of the Secretary of State for Education, hereunto affixed is authenticated by:





Duly Authorised

ANNEX TO THIS SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

Requirements for the Admission for pupils at the
Academy Annex 1

Annex A

[Memorandum and Articles]

Single and Multi Model

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
& COMPANIES (REGISTRATION) REGULATIONS 2008 (SI 2008/3014)

A COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION

OF

Aston Manor Academy

Single and Multi Model

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006

& COMPANIES (REGISTRATION) REGULATIONS 2008 (SI 2008/3014)

SCHEDULE 2

A COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE

Regulation 2(b)

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION OF

Aston Manor Academy

Each subscriber to this memorandum of association wishes to form a company under the Companies Act 2006 and agrees to become a member of the company.

Name of each subscriber Authentication by each subscriber

Name:

Signature:

Ray Linforth



Name:

Signature:

Roy Jesson



Name:

Signature:

Simon Spencer



Dated

Multi Academy Model

EFFECTIVE DATE: 17th July 2012

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006

|

A COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE

ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

OF

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

COMPANY NUMBER: 7662289

Multi Academy Model

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006 COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION OF EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

INTERPRETATION

1. In these Articles:-

- a. "the Academies" means all the schools referred to in Article 5(h) and established by the Company (and "Academy" shall mean any one of those schools);
- b. "Academy Financial Year" means the academic year from 1st of September to 31st of August in any year;
- c. "Academy Directors" means the Directors appointed pursuant to Articles 51-52 and Academy Director shall mean any one of those Directors;
- d. "Additional Directors" means the Directors appointed pursuant to Article 61 and 61A;
- e. "the Articles" means these Articles of Association of the Company;
- f. "Chief Inspector" means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;
- g. "clear days" in relation to the period of a notice means the period excluding the day when the notice is given or deemed to be given and the day on which it is given or on which it is to take effect;
- h. "the Company" means save as otherwise defined at Article 6.9 the company intended to be regulated by these Articles and referred to in Article 2;

Multi Academy Model

- i. “the Directors” means save as otherwise defined at Article 6.9 the directors of the Company (and “Director” means any one of those directors);
- j. “financial expert” means an individual, company or firm who is authorised to give investment advice under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;
- k. “Further Directors” means the Directors appointed pursuant to Article 62 ;
- l. “the LAs” means all the local authorities covering the areas in which the Academies are situated (and “the LA” shall mean any one of these local authorities);
- m. “Local Authority Associated Persons” means any person associated with any local authority within the meaning given in section 69 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989;
- n. “Local Governing Bodies” means the committees appointed pursuant to Articles 100-104 (and “Local Governing Body” means any one of these committees);
- o. “Member” means a member of the Company and someone who as such is bound by the undertaking contained in Article 8 ;
- p. “the Memorandum” means the Memorandum of Association of the Company;
- q. “Office” means the registered office of the Company;
- r. “Parent Directors” means the Directors if appointed pursuant to Articles 53 – 56 inclusive.
- s. “Principals” means the head teachers of the Academies (and “Principal” means any one of these head teachers);
- t. “Principal Regulator” means the body or person appointed as the Principal Regulator under the Charities Act 2006;
- u. “Relevant Funding Agreements” means the agreement or agreements entered into by the Company and the Secretary of State under section 1 of the Academies Act 2010 for the establishment of each Academy, including any variation or supplemental agreements thereof;

Multi Academy Model

- v. "Scheme of Delegation" means the terms of reference for the delegation of powers and responsibilities by the Directors to the Local Governing Bodies;
- w. "the seal" means the common seal of the Company if it has one;
- x. "Secretary" means the secretary of the Company or any other person appointed to perform the duties of the secretary of the Company, including a joint, assistant or deputy secretary;
- y. "Secretary of State" means the Secretary of State for Education or successor;
- z. "Sponsor" means such body or organisation recognised by the Secretary of State as the sponsor, supporter or promoter of the Supported Academy which for the avoidance of doubt may include one of the Academies established and maintained by the Company;
- aa. "Sponsor Director" means a Director appointed by the Sponsor pursuant to Article 50B;
- bb. "Supported Academy" means an Academy who is either sponsored or supported by the Sponsor from time to time and whilst it is so sponsored or supported as determined by the Directors;
- cc. "Staff Director" means an employee of the Company who may be appointed as a Director pursuant to Article 50A;¹
- dd. "teacher" means a person employed under a contract of employment or a contract for services or otherwise engaged to provide his services as a teacher at one or more Academies;
- ee. "the United Kingdom" means Great Britain and Northern Ireland;
- ff. "UCB" means the University College Birmingham, a higher education corporation and an exempt charity whose registered office is at Summer Row, Birmingham B3 1JB and includes any statutory successor;
- gg. "UCB Director" means a Director appointed by UCB pursuant to Article 50C;
- hh. words importing the masculine gender only shall include the feminine

¹ Its unlikely that there will be elected staff members on the Strategic Board of Directors in view of the size of body this would result in, but the flexibility to appoint an executive team e.g. finance director and CEO may be useful.

Multi Academy Model

gender. Words importing the singular number shall include the plural number, and vice versa;

- ii. subject as aforesaid, words or expressions contained in these Articles shall, unless the context requires otherwise, bear the same meaning as in the Companies Act 2006, as appropriate;
 - jj. any reference to a statute or statutory provision shall include any statute or statutory provision which replaces or supersedes such statute or statutory provision including any modification or amendment thereto.
2. The Company's name is Equitas Academies Trust (and in this document it is called "**the Company**").
3. The Company's registered office is to be situated in England and Wales.

OBJECTS

4. The Company's object ("**the Object**") is specifically restricted to the following:
- a) to advance for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom, in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing by establishing, maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing schools ("**the Academies**") offering a broad and balanced curriculum;
 - b) to promote for the benefit of the public in the United Kingdom the provision of facilities for recreation or other leisure time occupation of individuals who have need of such facilities by reason of their youth, age, infirmity or disablement, financial hardship or social and economic circumstances or for the public at large in the interests of social welfare and with the object of improving the condition of said inhabitants.²
5. In furtherance of the Object but not further or otherwise the Company may exercise the following powers:-
- (a) to draw, make, accept, endorse, discount, execute and issue promissory notes, bills, cheques and other instruments, and to operate bank accounts

² Check if wider objects are required to undertake any community activity.

Multi Academy Model

in the name of the Company;

- (b) to raise funds and to invite and receive contributions provided that in raising funds the Company shall not undertake any substantial permanent trading activities and shall conform to any relevant statutory regulations;
- (c) to acquire, alter, improve and (subject to such consents as may be required by law) to charge or otherwise dispose of property;
- (d) subject to Article 6 below to employ such staff, as are necessary for the proper pursuit of the Object and to make all reasonable and necessary provision for the payments of pensions and superannuation to staff and their dependants;
- (e) to establish or support, whether financially or otherwise, any charitable trusts, associations or institutions formed for all or any of the Object;
- (f) to co-operate with other charities, other independent and maintained schools, voluntary bodies and statutory authorities operating in furtherance of the Object and to exchange information and advice with them;
- (g) to pay out of funds of the Company the costs, charges and expenses of and incidental to the formation and registration of the Company;
- (h) to establish, maintain, carry on, manage and develop the Academies at locations to be determined by the Directors and in so doing shall have regard to the respective ethos and mission statement of each Academy;
- (i) to offer scholarships, exhibitions, prizes and awards to pupils and former pupils, and otherwise to encourage and assist pupils and former pupils;
- (j) to provide educational facilities and services to students of all ages and the wider community for the public benefit;
- (k) to carry out research into the development and application of new techniques in education in particular in relation to the areas of curricular specialisation of each of the Academies and to their approach to curriculum development and delivery and to publish the results of such research, and to develop means of benefiting from application of the experience of industry, commerce, other schools and the voluntary sector to the education

Multi Academy Model

of pupils in academies;

- (l) subject to such consents as may be required by law and/or by any contract entered into by or on behalf of the Company, to borrow and raise money for the furtherance of the Object in such manner and on such security as the Company may think fit;
- (m) to deposit or invest any funds of the Company not immediately required for the furtherance of its object (but to invest only after obtaining such advice from a financial expert as the Directors consider necessary and having regard to the suitability of investments and the need for diversification);
- (n) to delegate the management of investments to a financial expert, but only on terms that:
 - (i) the investment policy is set down in writing for the financial expert by the Directors;
 - (ii) every transaction is reported promptly to the Directors;
the performance of the investments is reviewed regularly with the Directors;
 - (iii) the Directors are entitled to cancel the delegation arrangement at any time;
 - (iv) the investment policy and the delegation arrangement are reviewed at least once a year;
 - (v) all payments due to the financial expert are on a scale or at a level which is agreed in advance and are notified promptly to the Directors on receipt; and
 - (vi) the financial expert must not do anything outside the powers of the Directors;
- (o) to arrange for investments or other property of the Company to be held in the name of a nominee company acting under the control of the Directors or of a financial expert acting under their instructions, and to pay any reasonable fee required;
- (p) to provide indemnity insurance to cover the liability of Directors and members of any Local Governing Body (in so far as necessary) which by virtue of any rule of law would otherwise attach to them in respect of any

Multi Academy Model

negligence, default, breach of trust or breach of duty of which they may be guilty in relation to the Company: Provided that any such insurance shall not extend to any claim arising from any act or omission which the Directors and members of any Local Governing Body knew to be a breach of trust or breach of duty or which was committed by the Directors and members of any Local Governing Body in reckless disregard of whether it was a breach of trust or breach of duty or not and provided also that any such insurance shall not extend to the costs of any unsuccessful defence to a criminal prosecution brought against the Directors and members of any Local Governing Body in their capacity as Directors or members of any Local Governing Body;³

- (q) to establish subsidiary companies to carry on any trade or business for the purpose of raising funds for the Company;
- (r) to do all such other lawful things as are necessary for or are incidental to or conducive to the achievement of the Object.

6.1 The income and property of the Company shall be applied solely towards the promotion of the Object.

6.2 None of the income or property of the Company may be paid or transferred directly or indirectly by way of dividend bonus or otherwise by way of profit to any member of the Company. Nonetheless a member of the Company who is not also a Director may:

- a) benefit as a beneficiary of the Company;
- b) be paid reasonable and proper remuneration for any goods or services supplied to the Company;
- c) be paid rent for premises let by the member of the Company if the amount of the rent and other terms of the letting are reasonable and proper; and
- d) be paid interest on money lent to the Company at a reasonable and proper

³ Whilst it is clear the Directors are the trustees for charity law purposes and thus it would be prudent to take out director liability insurance, this should be extended to the members of the LGB who may be exposed to liability as "shadow" directors and trustees in light of the expectation that there will be a high degree of devolved responsibility in the Scheme of Delegation.

Multi Academy Model

rate, such rate not to exceed 2 per cent per annum below the base lending rate of a UK clearing bank selected by the Directors, or 0.5%, whichever is the higher.

- 6.3 A Director may benefit from any indemnity insurance purchased at the Company's expense to cover the liability of the Directors which by virtue of any rule of law would otherwise attach to them in respect of any negligence, default or breach of trust or breach of duty of which they may be guilty in relation to the Company: Provided that any such insurance shall not extend to any claim arising from any act or omission which Directors knew to be a breach of trust or breach of duty or which was committed by the Directors in reckless disregard to whether it was a breach of trust or breach of duty or not and provided also that any such insurance shall not extend to the costs of any unsuccessful defence to a criminal prosecution brought against the Directors in their capacity as directors of the Company.
- 6.4 A company, which has shares listed on a recognised stock exchange and of which any one Director holds no more than 1% of the issued capital of that company, may receive fees, remuneration or other benefit in money or money's worth from the Company.
- 6.5 A Director may at the discretion of the Directors be reimbursed from the property of the Company for reasonable expenses properly incurred by him or her when acting on behalf of the Company, but excluding expenses in connection with foreign travel.
- 6.6 No Director may:
- (a) buy any goods or services from the Company;
 - (b) sell goods, services, or any interest in land to the Company;
 - (c) be employed by, or receive any remuneration from the Company (other than the Principals or any Staff Directors whose employment and/or remuneration is subject to the procedure and conditions in Article 6.8);
 - (d) receive any other financial benefit from the Company;
- unless:
- (i) the payment is permitted by Article 6.7 and the Directors follow the procedure and observe the conditions set out in Article 6.8; or

Multi Academy Model

- (ii) the Directors obtain the prior written approval of the Charity Commission and fully comply with any procedures it prescribes.

6.7 Subject to Article 6.8, a Director may:

- a) receive a benefit from the Company in the capacity of a beneficiary of the Company.
- b) be employed by the Company or enter into a contract for the supply of goods or services to the Company, other than for acting as a Director.
- c) receive interest on money lent to the Company at a reasonable and proper rate not exceeding 2% per annum below the base rate of a clearing bank to be selected by the Directors, or 0.5%, whichever is the higher.
- d) receive rent for premises let by the Director to the Company if the amount of the rent and the other terms of the lease are reasonable and proper.

6.8 The Company and its Directors may only rely upon the authority provided by Article 6.7 if each of the following conditions is satisfied:

- (a) the remuneration or other sums paid to the Director do not exceed an amount that is reasonable in all the circumstances.
- (b) the Director is absent from the part of any meeting at which there is discussion of:
 - i) his or her employment, remuneration, or any matter concerning the contract, payment or benefit; or
 - ii) his or her performance in the employment, or his or her performance of the contract (unless present solely in his capacity as an employee); or
 - iii) any proposal to enter into any other contract or arrangement with him or her or to confer any benefit upon him or her that would be permitted under Article 6.7; or
 - (iv) any other matter relating to a payment or the conferring of any benefit permitted by Article 6.7.

- (c) the Director does not vote on any such matter and is not to be counted when calculating whether a quorum of Directors is present at the meeting.

Multi Academy Model

(d) save in relation to employing or contracting with the Principals or any Staff Director (a Director pursuant to Articles 46 and/or 50A) the other Directors are satisfied that it is in the interests of the Company to employ or to contract with that Director rather than with someone who is not a Director. In reaching that decision the Directors must balance the advantage of employing a Director against the disadvantages of doing so (especially the loss of the Director's services as a result of dealing with the Director's conflict of interest).

(e) the reason for their decision is recorded by the Directors in the minute book.

(f) a majority of the Directors then in office have received no such payments or benefit.

6.8A The provision in Article 6.6 (c) that no Director may be employed by or receive any remuneration from the Company (other than the Principals or any Staff Director) does not apply to an employee of the Company who is subsequently elected or appointed as a Director save that this Article shall only allow such a Director to receive remuneration or benefit from the Company in his capacity as an employee of the Company and provided that the procedure as set out in Articles 6.8(b)(i), (ii) and 6.8 (c) is followed.

6.9 In Articles 6.2-6.9:

(a) "company" shall include any company in which the Company:

- holds more than 50% of the shares; or
- controls more than 50% of the voting rights attached to the shares; or
- has the right to appoint one or more Directors to the Board of the company.

(b) "Director" shall include any child, stepchild, parent, grandchild, grandparent, brother, sister or spouse of the Director or any person living with the Director as his or her partner

(c) the employment or remuneration of a Director includes the engagement or remuneration of any firm or company in which the Director is:

(i) a partner;

Multi Academy Model

- (ii) an employee;
 - (iii) a consultant;
 - (iv) a director;
 - (v) a member; or
 - (vi) a shareholder, unless the shares of the company are listed on a recognised stock exchange and the Director holds less than 1% of the issued capital.
7. The liability of the members of the Company is limited.
8. Every member of the Company undertakes to contribute such amount as may be required (not exceeding £10) to the Company's assets if it should be wound up while he or she is a member or within one year after he or she ceases to be a member, for payment of the Company's debts and liabilities before he or she ceases to be a member, and of the costs, charges and expenses of winding up, and for the adjustment of the rights of the contributories among themselves.
9. If the Company is wound up or dissolved and after all its debts and liabilities (including any under section 483 of the Education Act 1996) have been satisfied there remains any property it shall not be paid to or distributed among the members of the Company (except to a member that is itself a charity), but shall be given or transferred to some other charity or charities having objects similar to the Object which prohibits the distribution of its or their income and property to an extent at least as great as is imposed on the Company by Article 6 above, chosen by the members of the Company at or before the time of dissolution and if that cannot be done then to some other charitable object.
10. No alteration or addition shall be made to or in the provisions of the Articles without the written consent of the Secretary of State such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
11. No alteration or addition shall be made to or in the provisions of the Articles which would have the effect (a) that the Company would cease to be a company to which section 60 of the Companies Act 2006 applies; or (b) that the Company would cease to be a charity.

MEMBERS

Multi Academy Model

12. The Members of the Company shall comprise
- a. the signatories to the Memorandum⁴;
 - b. University College Birmingham⁵
 - c. 1 person appointed by the Secretary of State, in the event that the Secretary of State appoints a person for this purpose;
 - d. the Academy Directors; and
 - e. any person appointed under Article 16;
- 12A. The Secretary of State's appointed Member (further to Article 12c) shall become a Member upon the Secretary of State delivering or posting (by registered post) to the office of the Company a notice appointing a person as his Member.
13. Each of the persons entitled to appoint Members in Article 12 shall have the right from time to time by written notice delivered to the Office to remove any Member appointed by them and to appoint a replacement Member to fill a vacancy whether resulting from such removal or otherwise.
14. If any of the persons entitled to appoint Members in Article 12:
- a) in the case of an individual, die or become legally incapacitated;
 - b) in the case of a corporate entity, cease to exist and are not replaced by a successor institution; or
 - c) becomes insolvent or makes any arrangement or composition with their creditors generally
- their right to appoint Members under these Articles shall vest in the remaining Members.
15. Membership will terminate automatically if:

⁴ There must be no less than 3 signatories to the Memorandum of Association.

⁵ Optional Article for use if a particular body associated with the school is to have entitlement to appoint member[s].

Multi Academy Model

- a) a Member (which is a corporate entity) ceases to exist and is not replaced by a successor institution;
- b) a Member (which is an individual) dies or becomes incapable by reason of mental disorder, illness or injury of managing and administering his or her own affairs; or
- c) a Member becomes insolvent or makes any arrangement or composition with that Member's creditors generally
- d) a Member who was a Member by virtue of his post ceases to hold the relevant post provided that if automatic termination in this instance would result in the number of Members being less than three, the Member shall remain a Member until a further Member is appointed (which the remaining two Members shall be free to make without the approval of the retiring Member notwithstanding the provisions of Article 16) at which time the membership of the retiring Member shall terminate.

16. The Members may agree unanimously in writing to appoint such additional Members as they think fit and may unanimously (save that the agreement of the Member(s) to be removed shall not be required) in writing agree to remove any such additional Members.

17. Every person nominated to be a Member of the Company shall either sign a written consent to become a Member or sign the register of Members on becoming a Member.

18. Any Member may resign provided that after such resignation the number of Members is not less than three. A Member shall cease to be one immediately on the receipt by the Company of a notice in writing signed by the person or persons entitled to remove him under Articles 13 or 16 provided that no such notice shall take effect when the number of Members is less than three unless it contains or is accompanied by the appointment of a replacement Member.

GENERAL MEETINGS

- 19. The Company shall hold an Annual General Meeting every year in addition to any other meetings in that year, and shall specify the meeting as such in the notices calling it; and not more than fifteen months shall elapse between the

Multi Academy Model

date of one Annual General Meeting of the Company and that of the next. Provided that so long as the Company holds its first Annual General Meeting within eighteen months of its incorporation, it need not hold it in the year of its incorporation or in the following year. The Annual General Meeting shall be held at such time and place as the Directors shall appoint. All general meetings other than Annual General Meetings shall be called General Meetings.

20. The Directors may call general meetings and, on the requisition of Members pursuant to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, shall forthwith proceed to convene a general meeting in accordance with that Act. If there are not within the United Kingdom sufficient Directors to call a general meeting, any Director or any Member of the Company may call a general meeting.

NOTICE OF GENERAL MEETINGS

21. General meetings shall be called by at least fourteen clear days' notice but a general meeting may be called by shorter notice if it is so agreed by a majority in number of Members having a right to attend and vote and together representing not less than 90% of the total voting rights at that meeting.

The notice shall specify the time and place of the meeting and the general nature of the business to be transacted and, in the case of an Annual General Meeting, shall specify the meeting as such. The notice shall also state that the Member is entitled to appoint a proxy.

The notice shall be given to all the Members, to the Directors and auditors.

22. The accidental omission to give notice of a meeting to, or the non-receipt of notice of a meeting by, any person entitled to receive notice shall not invalidate the proceedings at that meeting.

PROCEEDINGS AT GENERAL MEETINGS.

23. No business shall be transacted at any meeting unless a quorum is present. A Member counts towards the quorum by being present either in person or by proxy. Two persons entitled to vote upon the business to be transacted, each being a Member or a proxy of a Member or a duly authorised representative of a Member organisation shall constitute a quorum.

Multi Academy Model

24. If a quorum is not present within half an hour from the time appointed for the meeting, or if during a meeting a quorum ceases to be present, the meeting shall stand adjourned to the same day in the next week at the same time and place or to such time and place as the Directors may determine.
25. The chairman, if any, of the Directors or in his absence some other Director nominated by the Directors shall preside as chairman of the meeting, but if neither the chairman nor such other Director (if any) be present within fifteen minutes after the time appointed for holding the meeting and willing to act, the Directors present shall elect one of their number to be chairman and, if there is only one Director present and willing to act, he shall be the chairman.
26. If no Director is willing to act as chairman, or if no Director is present within fifteen minutes after the time appointed for holding the meeting, the Members present and entitled to vote shall choose one of their number to be chairman.
27. A Director shall, notwithstanding that he is not a Member, be entitled to attend and speak at any general meeting.
28. The chairman may, with the consent of a majority of the Members at a meeting at which a quorum is present (and shall if so directed by the meeting), adjourn the meeting from time to time and from place to place, but no business shall be transacted at any adjourned meeting other than the business which might properly have been transacted at the meeting had the adjournment not taken place. When a meeting is adjourned for fourteen days or more, at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time and place of the adjourned meeting and the general nature of the business to be transacted. Otherwise it shall not be necessary to give any such notice.
29. A resolution put to the vote of the meeting shall be decided on a show of hands unless before, or on the declaration of the result of the show of hands, a poll is duly demanded. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, a poll may be demanded:-
 - (a) by the chairman; or
 - (b) by at least two Members having the right to vote at the meeting; or,
 - (c) by a Member or Members representing not less than one-tenth of the total voting rights of all the Members having the right to vote at the meeting.

Multi Academy Model

30. Unless a poll is duly demanded a declaration by the chairman that a resolution has been carried or carried unanimously, or by a particular majority, or lost, or not carried by a particular majority and an entry to that effect in the minutes of the meeting shall be conclusive evidence of the fact without proof of the number or proportion of the votes recorded in favour of or against such resolution.
31. The demand for a poll may be withdrawn, before the poll is taken, but only with the consent of the chairman. The withdrawal of a demand for a poll shall not invalidate the result of a show of hands declared before the demand for the poll was made.
32. A poll shall be taken as the chairman directs and he may appoint scrutineers (who need not be Members) and fix a time, date and place for declaring the results. The result of the poll shall be deemed to be the resolution of the meeting at which the poll was demanded.
33. A poll demanded on the election of the chairman or on a question of adjournment shall be taken immediately. A poll demanded on any other question shall be taken either immediately or at such time, date and place as the chairman directs not being more than thirty days after the poll is demanded. The demand for a poll shall not prevent continuance of a meeting for the transaction of any business other than the question on which the poll is demanded. If a poll is demanded before the declaration of the result of a show of hands and the demand is duly withdrawn, the meeting shall continue as if the demand had not been made.
34. No notice need be given of a poll not taken immediately if the time and place at which it is to be taken are announced at the meeting at which it is demanded. In other cases at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time and place at which the poll is to be taken.
35. A resolution in writing agreed by such number of members as required if it had been proposed at a general meeting shall be as effectual as if it had been passed at a general meeting duly convened and held provided that a copy of the proposed resolution has been sent to every Member. The resolution may consist of several instruments in the like form each agreed by one or more Members.

Multi Academy Model

VOTES OF MEMBERS

36. On the show of hands every Member present in person shall have one vote.
On a poll every Member present in person or by proxy shall have one vote.
37. Not used.
38. No Member shall be entitled to vote at any general meeting unless all moneys then payable by him to the Company have been paid.
39. No objections shall be raised to the qualification of any person to vote at any general meeting except at the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote objected to is tendered, and every vote not disallowed at the meeting shall be valid. Any objection made in due time shall be referred to the chairman whose decision shall be final and conclusive.
40. An instrument appointing a proxy shall be in writing, signed by or on behalf of the appointer and shall be in the following form (or in a form as near thereto as circumstances allow or in any other form which is usual or which the Directors may approve) -

"I/We,, of, being a Member/Members of the above named Company, hereby appoint of, or in his absence, of as my/our proxy to vote in my/our name[s] and on my/our behalf at the annual general meeting/ general meeting of the Company to be held on20[], and at any adjournment thereof.

Signed on 20[]"

41. Where it is desired to afford Members an opportunity of instructing the proxy how he shall act the instrument appointing a proxy shall be in the following form (or in a form as near thereto as circumstances allow or in any other form which is usual or which the Directors may approve)-

"I/We,, of, being a Member/Members of the above-named Company, hereby appoint of, or in his absence, of, as my/our proxy to vote in my/our name[s] and on my/our behalf at the annual general meeting/ general meeting of the Company, to be held on 20[], and at any adjournment thereof.

Multi Academy Model

This form is to be used in respect of the resolutions mentioned below as follows:

Resolution No. 1 *for * against

Resolution No. 2 *for * against.

- Strike out whichever is not desired.

Unless otherwise instructed, the proxy may vote as he thinks fit or abstain from voting.

Signed on 20[]"

42. The instrument appointing a proxy and any authority under which it is signed or a copy of such authority certified by a notary or in some other way approved by the Directors may -

(a) be deposited at the office or at such other place within the United Kingdom as is specified in the notice convening the meeting or in any instrument of proxy sent out by the Company in relation to the meeting not less than 48 hours before the time for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the person named in the instrument proposes to vote, or

(b) in the case of a poll taken more than 48 hours after it is demanded, be deposited as aforesaid after the poll has been demanded and not less than 24 hours before the time appointed for the taking of the poll;

(c) where the poll is not taken forthwith but is taken not more than 48 hours after it was demanded, be delivered at the meeting at which the poll was demanded to the chairman or to the Secretary or to any Director;

and an instrument of proxy which is not deposited or delivered in a manner so permitted shall be invalid.

43. A vote given or poll demanded by proxy or by the duly authorised representative of a corporation shall be valid notwithstanding the previous determination of the authority of the person voting or demanding a poll unless notice of the determination was received by the Company at the office or at such other place at which the instrument of proxy was duly deposited before the commencement of the meeting or

Multi Academy Model

adjourned meeting at which the vote given or the poll demanded or (or in the case of a poll taken otherwise than on the same day as the meeting or adjourned meeting) the time appointed for taking the poll.

44. Any organisation which is a Member of the Company may by resolution of its board of directors or other governing body authorise such person as it thinks fit to act as its representative at any meeting of the Company, and the person so authorised shall be entitled to exercise the same powers on behalf of the organisation which he represents as that organisation could exercise if it were an individual Member of the Company.

DIRECTORS

45. The number of Directors shall be not less than three but (unless otherwise determined by ordinary resolution) shall not be subject to any maximum⁶.

46. Subject to Articles 48-49 and 63, the Company shall have the following Directors:

- a. Directors, appointed under Article 50;
- b. any Staff Directors or Principals, appointed under Article 50A;
- c. Academy Directors appointed under Article 51 or Article 52;
- d. Parent Directors if appointed under Articles 53-56;
- e. Sponsor Directors, appointed under Article 50B;
- f. a UCB Director, appointed under Article 50C;
- g. Any Additional Directors, if appointed under Article 61, 61A or 67A;
- h. Any Further Directors, if appointed under Article 62 or Article 67A;
- i. Up to 2 Directors, if appointed by the Secretary of State in accordance with the terms of any of the Relevant Funding Agreements following the provision of a notice by the Company to terminate that Relevant Funding Agreement.

47. The Company may also have any Co-opted Director appointed under Article 58.

⁶ The size and composition of the Board needs careful thought.

Multi Academy Model

48. The first Directors shall be those persons named in the statement delivered pursuant to sections 9 and 12 of the Companies Act 2006.

49. Future Directors shall be appointed or elected, as the case may be, under these Articles. Where it is not possible for such a Director to be appointed or elected due to the fact that an Academy has not yet been established, then the relevant Article or part thereof shall not apply.

APPOINTMENT OF DIRECTORS

50. The Directors may appoint with the approval of the Sponsor such number of Directors as they see fit having regard to:

- (a) any recommendations and views of the Members in relation to ensuring that the people serving on the Board of Directors between them have an appropriate range of skills and experience and due attention is given to succession planning;
- (b) if relevant, the nomination by any third party organisation, from whom the Academies receive support or with whom the Company is working in partnership including any company or organisation connected to the Sponsor, of persons appointed to represent the views of such third party; and
- (c) the desirability of ensuring there is representation amongst the Directors from the parents of registered pupils at the Academies

50A. The Directors may appoint such number of Staff Directors and/or Principals to be Directors through such process as they may determine provided that the total number of Directors who are employees of the Company does not exceed one third of the total number of Directors.

50B. The Sponsor shall appoint such number of Sponsor Directors as they see fit whose responsibilities include ensuring that effective support is provided by the Company to the Supported Academies.

50C. UCB shall appoint the UCB Director.

Multi Academy Model

ACADEMY DIRECTORS

51. Subject to Article 52, the chairman of each Local Governing Body shall be an Academy Director for as long as he remains in office as such and shall be appointed by the Directors of the Company .

52. If the number of Academies exceeds 2, the chairmen of the Local Governing Bodies shall elect 2 persons from amongst their numbers to be the Academy Directors. Any person elected in accordance with this Article shall only remain an Academy Director for as long as he remains chairman of a Local Governing Body. The Directors shall make all necessary arrangements for, and determine all other matters relating to, the election of the Academy Directors in accordance with this Article. Any election of the Academy Directors which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.

PARENT DIRECTORS

53. In circumstances where the Directors have not appointed Local Governing Bodies in respect of the Academies as envisaged in Article 100 there shall be a minimum of 2 Parent Directors and otherwise such number as the Directors decide⁷.

54. Parent Directors shall be elected by the parents of registered pupils at the Academies and must be a parent at the time when he is elected.

54A. Notwithstanding Article 53, if no parents put themselves forward for election the number of Parent Directors required need not be made up by Parent Directors appointed by the Directors.

55. The Directors shall make all necessary arrangements for, and determine all other matters relating to, an election of the Parent Directors, including any question of whether a person is a parent of a registered pupil at one of the Academies. Any election of the Parent Directors which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.

56. In appointing a Parent Director the Directors shall appoint a person who is the parent of a registered pupil at an Academy; or where it is not reasonably practical to

⁷ This will need to be cleared with the DfE who prefer to see at least 2 Parent Directors. Having at least 2 Parent Directors may cause the Strategic Board to become unwieldy, particularly if there are also Sponsor and UCB Directors. Having no Parent Directors will only be acceptable if there is a clear commitment to ensuring there will be at least 2 parent members of each LGB, see Article 101.

Multi Academy Model

do so, a person who is the parent of a child of compulsory school age.

EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

57. If the Directors appoint a Staff Director to serve in an executive function, he shall be a Director for as long as he remains in office as such.

CO-OPTED DIRECTORS

58. The Directors may appoint up to 3 Co-opted Directors. A 'Co-opted Director' means a person who is appointed to be a Director by being Co-opted by Directors who have not themselves been so appointed. The Directors may not co-opt an employee of the Company as a Co-opted Director if thereby the number of Directors who are employees of the Company would exceed one third of the total number of Directors.

APPOINTMENT OF ADDITIONAL DIRECTORS

59. The Secretary of State may give a warning notice to the Directors where he is satisfied—

- i) that the standards of performance of pupils at any of the Academies are unacceptably low, or
- ii) that there has been a serious breakdown in the way any of the Academies are managed or governed, or
- iii) that the safety of pupils or staff of any of the Academies is threatened (whether by a breakdown of discipline or otherwise).

60. For the purposes of Article 59 a 'warning notice' is a notice in writing by the Secretary of State to the Company delivered to the Office setting out—

- (a) the matters referred to in Article 59;
- (b) the action which he requires the Directors to take in order to remedy those matters; and
- (c) the period within which that action is to be taken by the Directors ('the compliance period').

Multi Academy Model

61. The Secretary of State may appoint such Additional Directors as he thinks fit if the Secretary of State has:

- (a) given the Directors a warning notice in accordance with Article 59; and
- (b) the Directors have failed to comply, or secure compliance, with the notice to the Secretary of State's satisfaction within the compliance period.

61A The Secretary of State may also appoint such Additional Directors where following an Inspection by the Chief Inspector in accordance with the Education Act 2005 (an "Inspection") an Academy receives an Ofsted grading (being a grade referred to in The Framework for School Inspection or any modification or replacement of that document for the time being in force) which amounts to a drop, either from one Inspection to the next Inspection or between any two Inspections carried out within a 5 year period, of two Ofsted grades. For the purposes of the foregoing the grade received by the predecessor school as defined in the Relevant Funding Agreement shall be regarded as the grade received by the Academy.

62. The Secretary of State may also appoint such Further Directors as he thinks fit if a Special Measures Termination Event (as defined in the Relevant Funding Agreement) occurs in respect of any Academy.

63. Within 5 days of the Secretary of State appointing any Additional or Further Directors in accordance with Articles 61, 61A or 62, any Directors appointed under Articles 50, 50A, 50B, 50C and 51 and holding office immediately preceding the appointment of such Directors, shall resign immediately and any power to appoint Directors under Articles 50, 50A, 50B, 50C and 51 shall remain suspended until the Secretary of State removes one or more of the Additional or Further Directors.

TERM OF OFFICE

64. The term of office for any Director shall be 4 years , save that this time limit shall not apply to any Staff Director holding an executive post who shall serve ex officio and for so long as he or she remains in office as such. Subject to remaining eligible to be a particular type of Director, any Director may be re-appointed or re-elected.

RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL

Multi Academy Model

65. A Director shall cease to hold office if he resigns his office by notice to the Company (but only if at least three Directors will remain in office when the notice of resignation is to take effect).

66. A Director shall cease to hold office if he is removed by the person or persons who appointed him. This Article does not apply in respect of a Parent Director or Academy Director.

67. Where a Director resigns his office or is removed from office, the Director or, where he is removed from office, those removing him, shall give written notice thereof to the Secretary.

67A. Where an Additional or Further Director appointed pursuant to Articles 61, 61A or 62 ceases to hold office as a Director for any reason, other than being removed by the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to appoint an Additional or Further Director in his place.

DISQUALIFICATION OF DIRECTORS

68. No person shall be qualified to be a Director unless he is aged 18 or over at the date of his election or appointment. No current pupil of any of the Academies shall be a Director.

69. A Director shall cease to hold office if he becomes incapable by reason of mental disorder, illness or injury of managing or administering his own affairs.

70. A Director shall cease to hold office if he is absent without the permission of the Directors from all their meetings held within a period of six months and the Directors resolve that his office be vacated.

71. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Director if—

- (a) his estate has been sequestrated and the sequestration has not been discharged, annulled or reduced; or
- (b) he is the subject of a bankruptcy restrictions order or an interim order.

72. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a

Multi Academy Model

Director at any time when he is subject to a disqualification order or a disqualification undertaking under the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 or to an order made under section 429(2)(b) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (failure to pay under county court administration order).

73. A Director shall cease to hold office if he ceases to be a Director by virtue of any provision in the Companies Act 2006 or is disqualified from acting as a trustee by virtue of section 72 of the Charities Act 1993 (or any statutory re-enactment or modification of that provision).

74. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Director if he has been removed from the office of charity trustee or trustee for a charity by an order made by the Charity Commission or the High Court on the grounds of any misconduct or mismanagement in the administration of the charity for which he was responsible or to which he was privy, or which he by his conduct contributed to or facilitated.

75. A person shall be disqualified from holding or from continuing to hold office as a Director at any time when he is:

- (a) included in the list kept by the Secretary of State under section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1999; or
- (b) disqualified from working with children in accordance with Section 35 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000; or
- (c) barred from regulated activity relating to children (within the meaning of section 3(2) of the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006)

76. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Director if he is a person in respect of whom a direction has been made under section 142 of the Education Act 2002 or is subject to any prohibition or restriction which takes effect as if contained in such a direction.

77. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Director where he has, at any time, been convicted of any criminal offence, excluding any that have been spent under the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 as amended, and excluding any offence for which the maximum sentence is a fine or a lesser sentence except where a person has been convicted of any offence which falls

Multi Academy Model

under section 72 of the Charities Act 1993.

78. After the first Academy has opened, a person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Director if he has not provided to the chairman of the Directors a criminal records certificate at an enhanced disclosure level under section 113B of the Police Act 1997. In the event that the certificate discloses any information which would in the opinion of either the chairman or the Chief Executive Officer confirm their unsuitability to work with children that person shall be disqualified. If a dispute arises as to whether a person shall be disqualified, a referral shall be made to the Secretary of State to determine the matter. The determination of the Secretary of State shall be final.

79. Where, by virtue of these Articles a person becomes disqualified from holding, or continuing to hold office as a Director; and he is, or is proposed, to become such a Director, he shall upon becoming so disqualified give written notice of that fact to the Secretary.

80. Articles 68 to 79 and Articles 97-98 also apply to any member of any committee of the Directors, including a Local Governing Body, who is not a Director.

SECRETARY TO THE DIRECTORS

81. The Secretary shall be appointed by the Directors for such term, at such remuneration and upon such conditions as they may think fit; and any Secretary so appointed may be removed by them. The Secretary shall not be a Director, [or a Principal]. Notwithstanding this Article, the Directors may, where the Secretary fails to attend a meeting of theirs, appoint any one of their number or any other person to act as Secretary for the purposes of that meeting.

CHAIRMAN AND VICE-CHAIRMAN OF THE DIRECTORS

82. The Directors shall each school year, at their first meeting in that year, elect a chairman and a vice-chairman from among their number. A Director who is employed by the Company shall not be eligible for election as chairman or vice-chairman.

83. Subject to Article 84, the chairman or vice-chairman shall hold office as such until his successor has been elected in accordance with Article 85.

84. The chairman or vice-chairman may at any time resign his office by giving notice

Multi Academy Model

in writing to the Secretary. The chairman or vice-chairman shall cease to hold office if—

- (a) he ceases to be a Director;
- (b) he is employed by the Company;
- (c) he is removed from office in accordance with these Articles; or
- (d) in the case of the vice-chairman, he is elected in accordance with these Articles to fill a vacancy in the office of chairman.

85. Where by reason of any of the matters referred to in Article 84, a vacancy arises in the office of chairman or vice-chairman, the Directors shall at their next meeting elect one of their number to fill that vacancy.

86. Where the chairman is absent from any meeting or there is at the time a vacancy in the office of the chairman, the vice-chairman shall act as the chair for the purposes of the meeting.

87. Where in the circumstances referred to in Article 86 the vice-chairman is also absent from the meeting or there is at the time a vacancy in the office of vice-chairman, the Directors shall elect one of their number to act as a chairman for the purposes of that meeting, provided that the Director elected shall not be a person who is employed by the Company.

88. The Secretary shall act as chairman during that part of any meeting at which the chairman is elected.

89. Any election of the chairman or vice-chairman which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.

90. The Directors may remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office in accordance with these Articles.

91. A resolution to remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office which is passed at a meeting of the Directors shall not have effect unless—

- i) it is confirmed by a resolution passed at a second meeting of the Directors held not less than fourteen days after the first meeting; and

Multi Academy Model

- ii) the matter of the chairman's or vice-chairman's removal from office is specified as an item of business on the agenda for each of those meetings.

92. Before the Directors resolve at the relevant meeting on whether to confirm the resolution to remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office, the Director or Directors proposing his removal shall at that meeting state their reasons for doing so and the chairman or vice-chairman shall be given an opportunity to make a statement in response.

POWERS OF DIRECTORS

93. Subject to provisions of the Companies Act 2006, the Articles and to any directions given by special resolution, the business of the Company shall be managed by the Directors who may exercise all the powers of the Company. No alteration of the Articles and no such direction shall invalidate any prior act of the Directors which would have been valid if that alteration had not been made or that direction had not been given. The powers given by this Article shall not be limited by any special power given to the Directors by the Articles and a meeting of Directors at which a quorum is present may exercise all the powers exercisable by the Directors.

94. In addition to all powers hereby expressly conferred upon them and without detracting from the generality of their powers under the Articles the Directors shall have the following powers, namely:

- (a) to expend the funds of the Company in such manner as they shall consider most beneficial for the achievement of the Object and to invest in the name of the Company such part of the funds as they may see fit and to direct the sale or transposition of any such investments and to expend the proceeds of any such sale in furtherance of the Object;

- (b) to enter into contracts on behalf of the Company.

95. In the exercise of their powers and functions, the Directors may consider any advice given by any Staff Director and any other executive officer.

96. Any bank account in which any money of the Company is deposited shall be operated by the Directors in the name of the Company. All cheques and orders for the payment of money from such an account shall be signed by at least two

Multi Academy Model

signatories authorised by the Directors.

CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

97. Any Director who has or can have any direct or indirect duty or personal interest (including but not limited to any Personal Financial Interest) which conflicts or may conflict with his duties as a Director shall disclose that fact to the Directors as soon as he becomes aware of it. A Director must absent himself from any discussions of the Directors in which it is possible that a conflict will arise between his duty to act solely in the interests of the Company and any duty or personal interest (including but not limited to any Personal Financial Interest).
98. For the purpose of Article 97, a Director has a Personal Financial Interest in the employment or remuneration of, or the provision of any other benefit to, that Director as permitted by and as defined by Articles **6.5-6.9**.

THE MINUTES

99. The minutes of the proceedings of a meeting of the Directors shall be drawn up and entered into a book kept for the purpose by the person acting as Secretary for the purposes of the meeting; and shall be signed (subject to the approval of the Directors) at the same or next subsequent meeting by the person acting as chairman thereof. The minutes shall include a record of:
- (a) all appointments of officers made by the Directors; and
 - (b) all proceedings at meetings of the Company and of the Directors and of committees of Directors including the names of the Directors present at each such meeting.

COMMITTEES

100. Subject to these Articles, the Directors:
- a) may appoint separate committees to be known as Local Governing Bodies for each Academy and the Directors shall be free to appoint one committee for several academies if they so wish; and
 - b) may establish any other committee.

Multi Academy Model

101. Subject to these Articles, the constitution, membership and proceedings of any committee shall be determined by the Directors. The establishment, terms of reference, constitution and membership of any committee of the Directors shall be reviewed at least once in every twelve months. The membership of any committee of the Directors may include persons who are not Directors, provided that (with the exception of the Local Governing Bodies) a majority of members of any such committee shall be Directors. Except in the case of a Local Governing Body, no vote on any matter shall be taken at a meeting of a committee of the Directors unless the majority of members of the committee present are Directors. The Directors shall ensure that any Local Governing Body shall include at least 2 elected representatives of the parents of pupils attending the relevant Academy.

102. The power of delegation exercised under Article 105 in relation to the establishment of a Local Governing Body for an Academy shall be by way of Scheme of Delegation.

103. All members of a Local Governing Body shall upon their appointment or election give a written undertaking to the Directors to uphold the Object of the Company and shall recognise their authority to act on behalf of the Company only in accordance with the Scheme of Delegation.

104. The functions and proceedings of the Local Governing Bodies shall be subject to regulations made by the Directors from time to time.

DELEGATION

105. The Directors may delegate to any Director, committee (including any Local Governing Body), Principal, Staff Director or any other holder of an executive office, such of their powers or functions as they consider desirable to be exercised by them. Any such delegation shall be made subject to any conditions the Directors may impose, and may be revoked or altered.

106. Where any power or function of the Directors has been exercised by any committee (including any Local Governing Body), any Director, Principal, Staff Director or any other holder of an executive office, that person or committee shall report to the Directors in respect of any action taken or decision made with respect to the exercise of that power or function at the meeting of the Directors immediately following the taking of the action or the making of the decision.

Multi Academy Model

PRINCIPALS

107. The Directors shall appoint the Principals of the Academies provided that the appointment of any Principal of any Supported Academy shall only be made with the approval of the Sponsor. The Directors may delegate such powers and functions as they consider are required by the Principals for the internal organisation, management and control of the Academies (including the implementation of all policies approved by the Directors and for the direction of the teaching and curriculum at the Academies).

MEETINGS OF THE DIRECTORS

108. Subject to these Articles, the Directors may regulate their proceedings as they think fit.

109. The Directors shall hold at least three meetings in every school year. Meetings of the Directors shall be convened by the Secretary. In exercising his functions under this Article the Secretary shall comply with any direction—

- a. given by the Directors; or
- b. given by the chairman of the Directors or, in his absence or where there is a vacancy in the office of chairman, the vice-chairman of the Directors, so far as such direction is not inconsistent with any direction given as mentioned in (a).

110. Any three Directors may, by notice in writing given to the Secretary, requisition a meeting of the Directors; and it shall be the duty of the Secretary to convene such a meeting as soon as is reasonably practicable.

111. Each Director shall be given at least seven clear days before the date of a meeting –

- i) notice in writing thereof, signed by the Secretary, and sent to each Director at the address provided by each Director from time to time; and
- ii) a copy of the agenda for the meeting;

provided that where the chairman or, in his absence or where there is a vacancy in the office of chairman, the vice-chairman, so determines on the

Multi Academy Model

ground that there are matters demanding urgent consideration, it shall be sufficient if the written notice of a meeting, and the copy of the agenda thereof are given within such shorter period as he directs.

112. The convening of a meeting and the proceedings conducted thereat shall not be invalidated by reason of any individual not having received written notice of the meeting or a copy of the agenda thereof.

113. A resolution to rescind or vary a resolution carried at a previous meeting of the Directors shall not be proposed at a meeting of the Directors unless the consideration of the rescission or variation of the previous resolution is a specific item of business on the agenda for that meeting.

114. A meeting of the Directors shall be terminated forthwith if—

- (a) the Directors so resolve; or
- (b) the number of Directors present ceases to constitute a quorum for a meeting of the Directors in accordance with Article 117 , subject to Article 119 .

115. Where in accordance with Article 114 a meeting is not held or is terminated before all the matters specified as items of business on the agenda for the meeting have been disposed of, a further meeting shall be convened by the Secretary as soon as is reasonably practicable, but in any event within seven days of the date on which the meeting was originally to be held or was so terminated.

116. Where the Directors resolve in accordance with Article 114 to adjourn a meeting before all the items of business on the agenda have been disposed of, the Directors shall before doing so determine the time and date at which a further meeting is to be held for the purposes of completing the consideration of those items, and they shall direct the Secretary to convene a meeting accordingly.

117. Subject to Article 119 the quorum for a meeting of the Directors, and any vote on any matter thereat, shall be any three Directors, or, where greater, any one third (rounded up to a whole number) of the total number of Directors holding office at the date of the meeting. If the Secretary of State has appointed Additional or Further Directors then a majority of the quorum must be made up of Additional or Further Directors.

Multi Academy Model

118. The Directors may act notwithstanding any vacancies in their number, but, if the numbers of Directors is less than the number fixed as the quorum, the continuing Directors may act only for the purpose of filling vacancies or of calling a general meeting.

119. The quorum for the purposes of—

- (a) appointing a Parent Director under Articles 56;
- (b) any vote on the removal of a Director in accordance with Article 66;
- (c) any vote on the removal of the chairman of the Directors in accordance with Article 90;

shall be any two-thirds (rounded up to a whole number) of the persons who are at the time Directors entitled to vote on those respective matters.

120. Subject to these Articles, every question to be decided at a meeting of the Directors shall be determined by a majority of the votes of the Directors present and voting on the question. Every Director shall have one vote.

121. Subject to Articles 117-119, where there is an equal division of votes, the chairman of the meeting shall have a casting vote in addition to any other vote he may have.

122. The proceedings of the Directors shall not be invalidated by

- a. any vacancy among their number; or
- b. any defect in the election, appointment or nomination of any Director.

123. A resolution in writing, signed by all the Directors entitled to receive notice of a meeting of Directors or of a committee of Directors, shall be valid and effective as if it had been passed at a meeting of Directors or (as the case may be) a committee of Directors duly convened and held. Such a resolution may consist of several documents in the same form, each signed by one or more of the Directors.

124. Subject to Article 125, the Directors shall ensure that a copy of

- a. the agenda for every meeting of the Directors;

Multi Academy Model

- b. the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the person acting as chairman of that meeting;
 - c. the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
 - d. any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting,
- are, as soon as is reasonably practicable, made available at every Academy to persons wishing to inspect them.

125. There may be excluded from any item required to be made available in pursuance of Article 124, any material relating to—

- a. a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at any Academy;
- b. a named pupil at, or candidate for admission to, any Academy; and
- c. any matter which, by reason of its nature, the Directors are satisfied should remain confidential.

126. Any Director shall be able to participate in meetings of the Directors by telephone or video conference provided that:

- a. he has given notice of his intention to do so detailing the telephone number on which he can be reached and/or appropriate details of the video conference suite from which he shall be taking part at the time of the meeting at least 48 hours before the meeting; and,
- b. the Directors have access to the appropriate equipment if after all reasonable efforts it does not prove possible for the person to participate by telephone or video conference the meeting may still proceed with its business provided it is otherwise quorate.

PATRONS AND HONORARY OFFICERS

127. The Directors may from time to time appoint any person whether or not a Member of the Company to be a patron of the Company or to hold any honorary office and may determine for what period he is to hold such office.

THE SEAL

Multi Academy Model

128. The seal, if any, shall only be used by the authority of the Directors or of a committee of Directors authorised by the Directors. The Directors may determine who shall sign any instrument to which the seal is affixed and unless otherwise so determined it shall be signed by a Director and by the Secretary or by a second Director.

ACCOUNTS

129. Accounts shall be prepared in accordance with the relevant Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt charity and Parts 15 and 16 of the Companies Act 2006 and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

ANNUAL REPORT

130. The Directors shall prepare its Annual Report in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt charity and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

ANNUAL RETURN

131. The Directors shall comply with their obligations under Part 24 of the Charities Act 2006 (or any statutory re-enactment or modification of that Act) with regard to the preparation of an annual return to the Registrar of Companies and in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt charity and to the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

NOTICES

132. Any notice to be given to or by any person pursuant to the Articles (other than a notice calling a meeting of the directors) shall be in writing or shall be given using electronic communications to an address for the time being notified for that purpose to the person giving the notice. In these Articles, "Address" in relation to electronic communications, includes a number or address used for the purposes of such communications.

133. A notice may be given by the Company to a Member either personally or by

Multi Academy Model

sending it by post in a prepaid envelope addressed to the Member at his registered address or by leaving it at that address or by giving it using electronic communications to an address for the time being notified to the Company by the Member. A Member whose registered address is not within the United Kingdom and who gives to the Company an address within the United Kingdom at which notices may be given to him, or an address to which notices may be sent using electronic communications, shall be entitled to have notices given to him at that address, but otherwise no such Member shall be entitled to receive any notice from the Company.

134. A Member present, either in person or by proxy, at any meeting of the Company shall be deemed to have received notice of the meeting and, where necessary, of the purposes for which it was called.

135. Proof that an envelope containing a notice was properly addressed, prepaid and posted shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given. Proof that a notice contained in an electronic communication was sent in accordance with guidance issued by the Institute of Chartered Secretaries and Administrators shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given. A notice shall be deemed to be given at the expiration of 48 hours after the envelope containing it was posted or, in the case of a notice contained in an electronic communication, at the expiration of 48 hours after the time it was sent.

INDEMNITY

136. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006 every Director or other officer or auditor of the Company and every member of any Local Governing Body (in so far as necessary) shall be indemnified out of the assets of the Company against any liability incurred by him in that capacity in defending any proceedings, whether civil or criminal, in which judgment is given in favour or in which he is acquitted or in connection with any application in which relief is granted to him by the court from liability for negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the affairs of the Company.

RULES

137. The Directors may from time to time make such rules or bye laws as they may deem necessary or expedient or convenient for the proper conduct and management of the Company and for purposes of prescribing classes of and conditions of

Multi Academy Model

membership, and in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, they may by such rules or bye laws regulate:

- a. the admission and classification of Members of the Company (including the admission of organisations to membership) and the rights and privileges of such Members, and the conditions of membership and the terms on which Members may resign or have their membership terminated and the entrance fees, subscriptions and other fees or payments to be made by Members;
- b. the conduct of Members of the Company in relation to one another, and to the Company's servants;
- c. the setting aside of the whole or any part or parts of the Company's premises at any particular time or times or for any particular purpose or purposes;
- d. the procedure at general meetings and meetings of the Directors and committees of the Directors and meetings of the Local Governing Bodies in so far as such procedure is not regulated by the Articles; and,
- e. generally, all such matters as are commonly the subject matter of company rules.

138. The Company in general meeting shall have power to alter, add or to repeal the rules or bye laws and the Directors shall adopt such means as they think sufficient to bring to the notice of Members of the Company all such rules or bye laws, which shall be binding on all Members of the Company. Provided that no rule or bye law shall be inconsistent with, or shall affect or repeal anything contained in the Articles.

AVOIDING INFLUENCED COMPANY STATUS

139. Notwithstanding the number of Members from time to time, the maximum aggregate number of votes exercisable by Local Authority Associated Persons shall never exceed 19.9% of the total number of votes exercisable by Members in general meeting and the votes of the other Members having a right to vote at the meeting will be increased on a pro-rata basis.

140. No person who is a Local Authority Associated Person may be appointed as a Director if, once the appointment had taken effect, the number of Directors who are

Multi Academy Model

Local Authority Associated Persons would represent 20% or more of the total number of Directors. Upon any resolution put to the Directors, the maximum aggregate number of votes exercisable by any Directors who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall represent a maximum of 19.9% of the total number of votes cast by the Directors on such a resolution and the votes of the other Directors having a right to vote at the meeting will be increased on a pro-rata basis.

141. No person who is a Local Authority Associated Person is eligible to be appointed to the office of Director unless his appointment to such office is authorised by the local authority to which he is associated.

142. If at the time of either his becoming a Member of the Company or his first appointment to office as a Director any Member or Director was not a Local Authority Associated Person but later becomes so during his membership or tenure as a Director he shall be deemed to have immediately resigned his membership and/or resigned from his office as a Director as the case may be.

143. If at any time the number of Directors or Members who are also Local Authority Associated Persons would (but for Articles 139 to 142 inclusive) represent 20% or more of the total number of Directors or Members (as the case may be) then a sufficient number of the Directors or Members (as the case may be) who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall be deemed to have resigned as Directors or Members (as the case may be) immediately before the occurrence of such an event to ensure that at all times the number of such Directors or Members (as the case may be) is never equal to or greater than 20% of the total number of Directors or Members (as the case may be). Directors or Members (as the case may be) who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall be deemed to have resigned in order of their appointment date the most recently appointed resigning first.

144. The Members will each notify the Company and each other if at any time they believe that the Company or any of its subsidiaries has become subject to the influence of a local authority (as described in section 69 of the Local Government and Housing Act).

Annex B

Arrangements for pupils with Special Educational Needs ('SEN') and disabilities at Mainstream Academies

Duties in relation to pupils with SEN¹⁶

1. The Directors of the Company must, in respect of each **Mainstream Academy**, comply with all of the duties imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained schools in;
 - 1) Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 as amended from time to time¹⁷;
 - 2) The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 as amended from time to time;
 - 3) The Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2008 as amended from time to time¹⁸.
- 2. Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement, the Secretary of State may (whether following a complaint made to him or otherwise) direct the Company to comply with an obligation described in this Annex where the Company has failed to comply with any such obligation.
- 3. Where a child who has SEN is being educated in a **Mainstream Academy**, those concerned with making special educational provision for the child must secure that the child engages in the activities of the school together with children who do not have SEN, so far as is reasonably practicable and is compatible with:
 - (a) the child receiving the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for,
 - (b) the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated, and
 - (c) the efficient use of resources.
- 4. In addition to complying with the duties imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained schools set out in The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 (as amended from time to time) the Company must ensure that the website for each Academy includes details of the implementation of

¹⁶ Duties in relation to pupils with SEN at Special Academies are at clause 12A of the Master Funding Agreement.

¹⁷ Currently these duties are in sections 313 (Duty to have regard to the Special Educational Needs Code of Practice 2001); 317 (Duties in relation to pupils with special educational needs), 317A (Duty to advise parents that special educational provision is being made); and 324(5)(b) (Duty to admit the child where a school is named in the statement).

¹⁸ These Regulations are amended by The Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2009 (SI 2009 No 1387).

its policy for pupils with special educational needs; the arrangements for the admission of disabled pupils; the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being treated less favourably than other pupils; and the facilities provided to assist access to the Academy by disabled pupils (disabled pupils meaning pupils who are disabled for the purposes of the Equality Act

- 2010¹⁹).

Admissions²⁰

5. The Company must ensure that for each **Mainstream Academy** pupils with SEN are admitted on an equal basis with others in accordance with the Academy's admissions policy.
6. Where a local authority ("LA") proposes to name a **Mainstream Academy** in a statement of SEN made in accordance with section 324 of the Education Act 1996, it must give the Company written notice that it so proposes. Within 15 days of receipt of the LA's notice that it proposes to name the Academy in a statement, the Company must consent to being named, except where admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for other children; and where no reasonable steps may be made to secure compatibility. In deciding whether a child's inclusion would be incompatible with the efficient education of other children, the Company must have regard to the relevant guidance issued by the Secretary of State to maintained schools.
7. If the Company determines that admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education, it must, within 15 days of receipt of the LA's notice, notify the LA in writing that it does not agree that the Academy should be named in the pupil's statement. Such notice must set out all the facts and matters the Company relies upon in support of its contention that: (a) admitting the child would be incompatible with efficiently educating other children; and (b) the Company cannot take reasonable steps to secure this compatibility.
8. After service by the Company on the LA of any notice (further to paragraph 7 above) stating that it does not agree with the LA's proposal that the Academy be named, the Company must seek to establish from the LA, as soon as is reasonably practicable, whether or not the LA agrees with the Company. If the LA notifies the Company that

¹⁹ For the meaning of 'disabled', see section 6 of the Equality Act 2010.

²⁰ SEN Admissions requirements for special academies are set out in the Special Academy Supplemental Funding Agreement Annex 1.

it does not agree with the Company's response, and names the Academy in the child's statement, then the Company must admit the child to the school on the date specified in the statement or on the date specified by the LA.

9. Where the Company consider that the Academy should not have been named in a child's statement, they may ask the Secretary of State to determine that the LA has acted unreasonably in naming the Academy and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider.
10. The Secretary of State's determination shall, subject only to any right of appeal which any parent or guardian of the child may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability), be final.
11. If a parent or guardian of a child in respect of whom a statement is maintained by the local authority appeals to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) either against the naming of an Academy in the child's SEN statement or asking the Tribunal to name an Academy, then the decision of the Tribunal on any such appeal shall be binding and shall, if different from that of the Secretary of State under paragraph 9 above, be substituted for the Secretary of State's decision.
12. Where the Company, the Secretary of State or the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) have determined that it should be named, the Company shall admit the child to the Academy notwithstanding any provision of Annex 1 of the Supplemental Agreement of that Academy.

Schedule 2

Existing Aston Manor Academy SFA

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

SCHEDULE 1

MODEL SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT made

4/9/ 2012

BETWEEN

(1) THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION; and

(2) EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

IS SUPPLEMENTAL TO THE MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT made between the same parties and dated • 4/9/ 2012 (the "Master Agreement").

1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement shall have the same meanings in this Agreement as were ascribed to them in the Master Agreement.

1.2 The following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:

"the Academy" means Aston Manor School established at Philips Street, Aston, Birmingham, B6 4PZ.

"Chief Inspector" means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;

"Insured Risks" means fire lightning explosion earthquake storm tempest flood subsidence landslip heave impact terrorism bursting or overflowing of water tanks and pipes earthquake damage by aircraft and other aerial devices or articles dropped there from riot and civil commotion labour disturbance and malicious damage and such other risks as the Company insures against from time to time subject in all cases to any exclusions or limitations as may from time to time be imposed by the insurers or underwriters.

"the Land" means the publicly funded land (including for the avoidance of doubt all buildings, structures landscaping and other erections) situated at

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

and known as Aston Manor School Philips Street, Aston, Birmingham, B6 4PZ and registered under title number WM961064.

- 1.3 Reference in this Agreement to clauses and Annexes shall, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes of this Agreement.

2 THE ACADEMY

- 2.1 The Company will establish and maintain, and carry on or provide for the carrying on of the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement¹.
- 2.2 The curriculum provided by the Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced,
- 2.3 The requirements for the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out at Annex 1.

ACADEMY OPENING DATE

- 2.4 The Academy opened on 1st July 2011 replacing Aston Manor School and ceased to be maintained by the Local Authority on that date, which date shall be the conversion date within the meaning of the Academies Act 2010².
- 2.5 The planned capacity of the Academy is 950 in the age range 11-19 including a sixth form of 200 places.

3 CAPITAL GRANT

- 3.1 Pursuant to clause 38 of the Master Funding Agreement, the Secretary of State may, in his absolute discretion provide Capital Expenditure funding in accordance with any arrangements he considers appropriate.

¹ If the Academy is to be a "selective school" then insert the following wording at the end of paragraph 2.1 – "...save that clause 12(c) of the Master Agreement does not apply as the Academy is a "selective school" within the meaning of Section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010 and additionally clause 19 does not apply in so far as it provides for the Academy to be an all ability inclusive school".

² Delete words in square brackets if the SFA is being used for an Academy that is replacing a maintained school following school closure under the Education and Inspections Act 1996.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

4 GAG AND EAG

4.1 The Secretary of State agrees to pay GAG and EAG to the Company in relation to the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement.

4A COMPLAINTS³

4A.1 If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part prior to the opening of any Academy , as referred to in clause 2.4 of the relevant supplemental agreement, and all or part of that complaint was being or had been investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III or the Local Government Act 1974 ('Part III') or that complaint in whole or in part could have been investigated under Part III had the school the Academy replaced remained a maintained school, the Company:

- a) will abide by the provisions of Part III as though the Academy were a maintained school;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State shall have the power to investigate the matter complained of as if it had taken place after conversion;
- c) agrees to act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as though that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school.

4A.2) If the Secretary of State could have given an order and/or a direction under section 496 and/or section 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 2.4 of the relevant supplemental agreement) and that order and/or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately prior to conversion, the Company agrees:

- a) the Secretary of State may give orders and/or directions to the Company as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school;
- b) to act in accordance with any such order and/or direction from the Secretary

³ Only include this clause if it is not already contained in the Master Funding Agreement. Otherwise mark as 'Not used'.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

of State.

5 TERMINATION

- 5.1 Either party may give not less than seven Academy Financial Years' written notice to terminate this Agreement, such notice to expire on 31 August 2019 or any subsequent anniversary of that date.
- 5.2 If the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the Academy no longer has the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement or that the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13–34B of the Master Agreement are not being met, or that the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement, the Secretary of State may give notice of his provisional intention to terminate this Agreement.
- 5.3 Any such notice shall be in writing and shall:
- 5.3.1. state the grounds on which the Secretary of State considers the Academy no longer has the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement or is not meeting the conditions and requirements of clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement or the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement;
- 5.3.2. specify the measures needed to remedy the situation or breach;
- 5.3.3. specify a reasonable date by which these measures are to be implemented; and
- 5.3.4. state the form in which the Company is to provide its response and a reasonable date by which it must be provided.
- 5.4 If no response is received by the date specified in accordance with clause 5.3.4, the Secretary of State may give the Company 12 months, or such lesser period as he considers appropriate in the circumstances, written notice to terminate this Agreement.

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

- 5.5 If a response is received by the date specified in accordance with clause 5.3.4, the Secretary of State shall consider it, and any representations made by the Company, and shall, within three months of its receipt, indicate that:
- 5.5.1. he is content with the response and/or that the measures which he specified are being implemented; or
- 5.5.2. he is content, subject to any further measures he reasonably specifies being implemented by a specified date or any evidence he requires that implementation of such measures have been successfully completed; or
- 5.5.3. he is not satisfied, that he does not believe that he can be reasonably satisfied, and that he will proceed to terminate the Agreement.
- 5.6 In the circumstances of clause 5.5.3 the Secretary of State shall notify the Company why he believes that he cannot be reasonably satisfied and, if so requested by the Company within thirty days from such notification, he shall meet a deputation including representatives from directors of the Company and the Local Governing Body of the Academy to discuss his concerns. If following such meeting he has good reasons for remaining satisfied that the Academy does not and will not have the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement or does not and will not meet the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement or the Company is in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement and such breach will not be remedied to his reasonable satisfaction, he shall give the Company twelve months written notice to terminate this Agreement.
- 5.7 If the Secretary of State has cause to serve a notice on the Company under section 165 of the Education Act 2002 and a determination (from which all rights of appeal have been exhausted) has been made that the Academy shall be struck off the Register of Independent Schools, the period of twelve months notice referred to in clause 5.6 may be shortened to a period deemed appropriate by the Secretary of State.
- 5.8 The Secretary of State shall, at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide to the Company an indication of the level of funding to

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

be provided by the Secretary of State to the Company by way of GAG and EAG in the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Indicative Funding**”). If the Company is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Indicative Funding for the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Critical Year**”) and of the taking into account all other resources available and likely to be available to the Academy, including such funds as are set out in clause 73 of the Master Agreement and such other funds as are and likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Company (“**All Other Resources**”), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding, to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Company may give notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement at the end of the then current Academy Financial Year.

- 5.9 Any notice given by the Company under clause 5.8 shall be in writing and shall be served on the Secretary of State not later than 28 February preceding the Critical Year or, if the Secretary of State shall not have given notice of the Indicative Funding to the Company on or before the date specified in clause 5.8 above, within six weeks after the Secretary of State shall have done so. The notice must specify:

- 5.9.1. the grounds upon which the Company’s opinion is based and include the evidence of those grounds and any professional accounting advice the Company has received and including a detailed statement of steps which the Company proposes to take with a view to ensuring that as soon as reasonably practicable the costs of running the Academy are reduced sufficiently to ensure that such costs are less than the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and
- 5.9.2. the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Company to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and
- 5.9.3. a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the “**Projected Budget**”).

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

- 5.10 Both parties undertake to use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and undertake to use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.
- 5.11 If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or such other date as may be agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources would cause the Company to become insolvent, then that question shall be referred to an independent expert (the “**Expert**”) for resolution. The Expert’s determination shall be final and binding on both parties. The Expert shall be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the “**Shortfall**”). The Expert shall be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert shall be appointed by the President for the time being of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.12 The Expert shall be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of large schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist shall be appointed by the Chairman for the time being of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust. The educational specialist’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.13 If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State shall not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Company shall be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August prior to the Critical Year. Any such notice shall be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert’s determination shall have

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State shall have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

- 5.14 If the Company shall have given notice to terminate the Agreement under 5.13, the Secretary of State may by notice in writing to the Company require the Company to appoint up to two persons as directors of the Company in accordance with the Articles.
- 5.15 The Secretary of State may at any time by notice in writing terminate this Agreement forthwith if the Academy has ceased (except where such cessation occurs temporarily by reason of an event beyond the reasonable control of the Company) to operate as an Academy within the meaning of Section 1 of the Academies Act 2010.
- 5.16 A "Special Measures Termination Event Occurs" when:
- 5.16.1. the Chief Inspector gives a notice to the Company in accordance with section 13(3) of the Education Act 2005 (the "Special Measures Notice") stating that in his opinion special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy; and
 - 5.16.2. the Chief Inspector carries out a subsequent inspection of the Academy in accordance with the Education Act 2005 and makes a report in accordance with the Education Act 2005 stating that the Academy has made inadequate progress since the date of the Special Measures Notice; and
 - 5.16.3. the Secretary of State shall have requested the Company to deliver within 10 Business Days a written statement (a "Further Action Statement") of the action the Company proposes to take, and the period within which it proposes to take such action, or, if it does not propose to take any action, the reasons for not doing so; and
 - 5.16.4. the Secretary of State, having considered the Further Action Statement, is not satisfied that any action proposed to be taken by the Company is sufficient in all the circumstances, or, if no Further Action Statement shall have been given to the Secretary of State within the requested timeframe or otherwise.
- 5.17 If a Special Measures Termination Event occurs, the Secretary of State may:

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

5.17.1.by notice in writing to the Company terminate this Agreement forthwith; or

5.17.2.subject to clause 102 of the Master Agreement, appoint such Further Directors to the Company as he thinks fit in accordance with the Articles and/or may provide up to 12 months' notice in writing to terminate this Agreement.

5.18 In the event that the Secretary of State appoints Further Directors in accordance with clause 5.17.2, the Company must, upon the request of the Secretary of State, procure the resignation of the Directors appointed in accordance with Article 50 of the Articles of Association.

6 EFFECT OF TERMINATION

6.1 In the event of termination of this Agreement however occurring, the school shall cease to be an Academy within the meaning of Section 1 of the Academies Act 2010.

6.2 Subject to clause 6.3, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement for reasons other than that a Special Measure Termination Event occurs, the Academy no longer has the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement, or is no longer meeting the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement or that the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement, the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Company.

6.3 The amount of any such indemnity shall be determined by the Secretary of State having regard to any representations made to him by the Company, and shall be paid at such times and in such manner as the Secretary of State may reasonably think fit.

6.4 The categories of expenditure incurred by the Company in consequence of the termination of the Agreement in respect of which the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Company include (but not by way of limitation), staff compensation and redundancy payments, compensation payments in respect of broken contracts, expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes, legal and other professional fees, and dissolution expenses.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

- 6.5 Subject to clause 6.6, on the termination of this Agreement however occurring, the Company shall in respect of any of its capital assets at the date of termination:
- (a) promptly transfer a proportion of the assets to a person nominated by the Secretary of State, if the Secretary of State considers that all or some of those assets need to be used for educational purposes by that nominee. The proportion of the assets to be transferred shall be the same as the proportion of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later; or
 - (b) if the Secretary of State confirms that a transfer under clause 6.5(a) is not required, promptly repay to the Secretary of State a sum equivalent to the percentage of the value of the assets at the date of termination, or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of subsequent disposal of those assets. Such percentage to be the same as the percentage of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later.
- 6.6 The Secretary of State may waive in whole or in part the repayment due under clause 6.5(b) if:
- a) The Company obtains his permission to invest the proceeds of sale for its charitable objects; or
 - b) The Secretary of State directs all or part of the repayment to be paid to the L A.
- 6.7 The sale or disposal by other means of publicly funded land held for the purposes of an Academy is now governed by Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

LAND

Restrictions on Land transfer

6A Recognising that they are or will be receiving publicly funded land at nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent) the Company:

a) shall, within 28 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry for a restriction in the proprietorship register (under section 43(1)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002 in Form RX1 as prescribed by Rule 91 and Schedule 4 of the Land Registration Rules 2003) in the following terms:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT

b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,

c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,

d) in the event that it has not registered the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a), hereby consents to the entering of the restriction referred to in 6A(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (under s. 43(1)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),

e) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a restriction entered in accordance with clause 6A(a) or 6A(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Company.

**Multi Academy Model
Mainstream**

Repair and Upkeep

- 6B) The Company shall keep the Land clean and tidy and make good any damage it causes to the Land and / or any deterioration to the condition of the Land that may arise from the date of this Agreement.

Insurance

6C) The Company shall:-

- a) keep the Land insured with a reputable insurance office against loss or damage by the Insured Risks in the sum the Company is advised represents the reinstatement value of the Land from time to time;
- b) pay the premiums for insurance promptly as they become due and maintain in force the policies of insurance on the Land;
- c) following the incidence of damage to or destruction of the Land and subject to receipt of all necessary consents licences permissions and the like apply the proceeds of the policy of the insurance received for those purposes in rebuilding and reinstating the Land (provided that this clause should be satisfied if the Company provides premises not necessarily identical to the Land as the same existing prior to such damage or destruction occurring) as soon as may be reasonably practicable;
- d) produce to the Secretary of State a copy of the insurance policy whenever reasonably requested and the receipt for the last or other evidence of renewal and up to date details of the amount of cover (but no more often than once in any period of 12 months in both cases);
- e) not knowingly do anything whereby any policy of insurance relating to the Land may become void or voidable.
- f) insure against liability in respect of property owners' and third party risks including occupiers liability.

Transfer of Land on Termination of Agreement

- 6D) In recognition by the Company that they are or will be taking a transfer of publicly-funded land for nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent), the Company hereby grants and the Secretary of State hereby accepts an option, exercisable by the Secretary of State or his nominee, to transfer the said land

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

pursuant to Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010. The option hereby granted shall be exercisable (by notice in writing by or on behalf of the Secretary of State) on the termination of this Funding Agreement for whatever cause. On the exercise of this option, the Law Society's Standard Conditions of Sale for Commercial Property in force at the date of such exercise shall apply to the transaction and completion shall take place 28 days after such exercise.

6E) In further recognition by the Company that they are or will be taking a transfer of publicly-funded land for nil consideration, (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent), to protect the option granted under clause 6D, the Company:

a) shall, within 14 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry in Form AN1 as prescribed by Rule 81 of the Land Registration Rules 2003 for a notice to be entered in the register (under section 34(3)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002) to protect the option granted under clause 6D and including a copy of this Agreement as evidence of that option.

b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the notice referred to in clause 6E(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,

c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the notice referred to in clause 6E(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,

d) in the event that it has not registered the notice referred to in clause 6E(a), hereby consents to the entering of the notice referred to in 6E(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (by application in Form UN1 under s. 34(3)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),

e) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a notice entered in accordance with clause 6E(a) or 6E(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Company.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

f) in the case of previously unregistered land, for the further protection of the option granted in Clause 6D the Company shall within 14 days of the signing of this Agreement make application to register a Class C (iv) land charge in the Land Charges Registry and a Caution against First Registration in the Land Registry and shall provide the Secretary of State with copies of the entries secured thereby within 7 days of completing each registration, respectively. If the Secretary of State is of the view that the Company has failed to perform the registration obligations in this sub-clause he shall be at liberty to make his own applications to secure these registrations.

7 **ANNEX**

7.1 The Annex to this Agreement forms part of and is incorporated into this Agreement.

8 **THE MASTER AGREEMENT**

8.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement the Master Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

9 **ENGLISH LAW**

9.1 This Agreement shall be governed by and interpreted in accordance with English law.

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

4/9/ 2012

Executed on behalf of Equitas Academies Trust by:

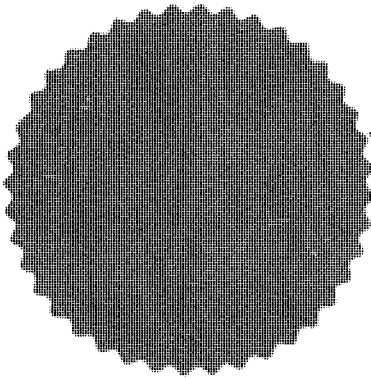
R. L. Cooper

Director

R. J. Jenson

Director/Secretary

The Corporate Seal of the Secretary of State for Education, hereunto affixed is authenticated by:



R. J. Jenson

Duly Authorised

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

ANNEX TO THIS SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

Requirements for the Admission for pupils at the
Academy Annex 1

Annex 1

REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ADMISSION OF PUPILS TO ASTON MANOR ACADEMY

GENERAL

1. This annex may be amended in writing at any time by agreement between the Secretary of State and the Company.

2. Except as provided in paragraphs 2A to 2B below the Company will act in accordance with, and will ensure that an Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, all relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code, and the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education ("the Codes") as they apply at any given time to maintained schools and with equalities law and the law on admissions as they apply to maintained schools. For this purpose, reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" shall be deemed to be references to the Directors of the Company.

2A The Company is permitted to determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in accordance with the School Admissions Code) that give priority for admission (but not above looked after children and previously looked after children⁴) to other children attracting the pupil premium, including the service premium ('the pupil premium admission criterion'). Where a Company exercises this freedom it will provide information in its admission arrangements of eligibility for the premiums.

2B For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:

- any personal details about their financial status; or

⁴ As defined in the School Admissions Code.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

- whether parents are serving in the armed forces (of any nation), stationed in England, and exercising parental care and responsibility for the child in question.
3. Notwithstanding the generality of paragraph 2 of this Annex, the Company will participate in the co-ordinated admission arrangements operated by the Local Authority (LA) and the local Fair Access Protocol.
4. Notwithstanding any provision in this Annex, the Secretary of State may:
- (a) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to the Aston Manor Academy on application from an LA. This will include complying with a School Attendance Order⁵. Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Company;
 - (b) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to the Aston Manor Academy if the Company has failed to act in accordance with this Annex or has otherwise failed to comply with applicable admissions and equalities legislation or the provisions of the Codes;
 - (c) direct the Company to amend its admission arrangements where they fail to comply with the School Admissions Code or the School Admission Appeals Code.
5. The Company shall ensure that parents and 'relevant children'⁶ will have the right of appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Company. The Independent Appeal Panel will be independent of the Company. The arrangements for appeals will comply with the School Admission Appeals Code published by

⁵ Local authorities are able to issue school attendance orders if a child is not attending school. These are legally binding upon parents. Such an order might, for instance, be appropriate where a child has a place at an Academy but his/her parents are refusing to send him/her to school. The order will require a parent to ensure his/her child attends a specified school.

⁶ 'relevant children' means:

- a) in the case of appeals for entry to a sixth form, the child, and;
- b) in any other case, children who are above compulsory school age, or will be above compulsory school age by the time they start to receive education at the school.

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

the Department for Education as it applies to Foundation and Voluntary Aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

Relevant Area

6. Subject to paragraph 7, the meaning of "Relevant Area" for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the local authority for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

7. If the Company does not consider the relevant area determined by the local authority for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Company and the LA in which the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.

Requirement to admit pupils

8. Pupils on roll in any predecessor maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at any predecessor school will be admitted.

9. The Company will:

- a. subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State in relation to a named pupil, admit all pupils with a statement of special educational needs naming the Academy;
- b. determine admission oversubscription criteria for the Academy that give highest priority to looked after children and previously looked after children, in accordance with the relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code.

Oversubscription criteria, admission number, consultation, determination and objections.

10. The Academy admission arrangements will include oversubscription criteria, and an admission number for each relevant age group⁷. The Company will consult on the Academy's admission arrangements and determine them in line with the requirements within the School Admissions Code.

⁷ 'Relevant age group' means 'normal point of admission to the school, for example, year R, Year7 and Year 12.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

11. The Office of the School's Adjudicator (OSA) will consider objections to the Academy's admission arrangements⁸. The Company should therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy's admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA.

12. A determination of an objection by the OSA will be binding upon the Academy and the Company will make appropriate changes as quickly as possible.

⁸ The OSA has no jurisdiction to consider objections against the agreed variation from the Codes set out in paragraphs 2A and 2B.

Schedule 3

Existing Chilwell Croft Academy SFA

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

SCHEDULE 1

MODEL SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT made

4 / 9 / 2012

BETWEEN

(1) **THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION**; and

(2) **EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST**

IS SUPPLEMENTAL TO THE MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT made between the same parties and dated 4 / 9 / 2012 (the "Master Agreement").

1 **DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION**

1.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement shall have the same meanings in this Agreement as were ascribed to them in the Master Agreement.

1.2 The following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:

"the Academy" means Chilwell Croft Academy established at Chilwell Croft, Newtown, Birmingham, B19 2QH.

"Chief Inspector" means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;

"the Land" means the publicly funded land (including for the avoidance of doubt all buildings, structures landscaping and other erections) situated at and known as Chilwell Croft Academy, Chilwell Croft, Newtown, Birmingham, B19 2QH.

1.3 Reference in this Agreement to clauses and Annexes shall, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes of this Agreement.

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

2 THE ACADEMY

- 2.1 The Company will establish and maintain, and carry on or provide for the carrying on of the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement¹.
- 2.2 The curriculum provided by the Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced,
- 2.3 The requirements for the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out at Annex 1.

ACADEMY OPENING DATE

- 2.4 The Academy shall open as a school on 1st September 2012 replacing Chilwell Croft Primary School which shall cease to be maintained by the Local Authority on that date, which date shall be the conversion date within the meaning of the Academies Act 2010².
- 2.5 The planned capacity of the Academy is 420 in the age range 4-11..

3 CAPITAL GRANT

- 3.1 Pursuant to clause 38 of the Master Funding Agreement, the Secretary of State may, in his absolute discretion provide Capital Expenditure funding in accordance with any arrangements he considers appropriate.

4 GAG AND EAG

- 4.1 The Secretary of State agrees to pay GAG and EAG to the Company in relation to the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement.

¹ If the Academy is to be a "selective school" then insert the following wording at the end of paragraph 2.1 – "...save that clause 12(c) of the Master Agreement does not apply as the Academy is a "selective school" within the meaning of Section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010 and additionally clause 19 does not apply in so far as it provides for the Academy to be an all ability inclusive school".

² Delete words in square brackets if the SFA is being used for an Academy that is replacing a maintained school following school closure under the Education and Inspections Act 1996.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

4A COMPLAINTS³

4A.1 If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part prior to the opening of any Academy , as referred to in clause 2.4 of the relevant supplemental agreement, and all or part of that complaint was being or had been investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III or the Local Government Act 1974 ('Part III') or that complaint in whole or in part could have been investigated under Part III had the school the Academy replaced remained a maintained school, the Company:

- a) will abide by the provisions of Part III as though the Academy were a maintained school;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State shall have the power to investigate the matter complained of as if it had taken place after conversion;
- c) agrees to act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as though that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school.

4A.2) If the Secretary of State could have given an order and/or a direction under section 496 and/or section 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 2.4 of the relevant supplemental agreement) and that order and/or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately prior to conversion, the Company agrees:

- a) the Secretary of State may give orders and/or directions to the Company as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school;
- b) to act in accordance with any such order and/or direction from the Secretary of State.

³ Only include this clause if it is not already contained in the Master Funding Agreement. Otherwise mark as 'Not used'.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

5 **TERMINATION**

- 5.1 Either party may give not less than seven Academy Financial Years' written notice to terminate this Agreement, such notice to expire on 31 August 2019 or any subsequent anniversary of that date.
- 5.2 If the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the Academy no longer has the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement or that the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13–34B of the Master Agreement are not being met, or that the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement, the Secretary of State may give notice of his provisional intention to terminate this Agreement.
- 5.3 Any such notice shall be in writing and shall:
- 5.3.1. state the grounds on which the Secretary of State considers the Academy no longer has the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement or is not meeting the conditions and requirements of clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement or the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement;
- 5.3.2. specify the measures needed to remedy the situation or breach;
- 5.3.3. specify a reasonable date by which these measures are to be implemented; and
- 5.3.4. state the form in which the Company is to provide its response and a reasonable date by which it must be provided.
- 5.4 If no response is received by the date specified in accordance with clause 5.3.4, the Secretary of State may give the Company 12 months, or such lesser period as he considers appropriate in the circumstances, written notice to terminate this Agreement.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

- 5.5 If a response is received by the date specified in accordance with clause 5.3.4, the Secretary of State shall consider it, and any representations made by the Company, and shall, within three months of its receipt, indicate that:
- 5.5.1. he is content with the response and/or that the measures which he specified are being implemented; or
- 5.5.2. he is content, subject to any further measures he reasonably specifies being implemented by a specified date or any evidence he requires that implementation of such measures have been successfully completed; or
- 5.5.3. he is not satisfied, that he does not believe that he can be reasonably satisfied, and that he will proceed to terminate the Agreement.
- 5.6 In the circumstances of clause 5.5.3 the Secretary of State shall notify the Company why he believes that he cannot be reasonably satisfied and, if so requested by the Company within thirty days from such notification, he shall meet a deputation including representatives from directors of the Company and the Local Governing Body of the Academy to discuss his concerns. If following such meeting he has good reasons for remaining satisfied that the Academy does not and will not have the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement or does not and will not meet the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement or the Company is in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement and such breach will not be remedied to his reasonable satisfaction, he shall give the Company twelve months written notice to terminate this Agreement.
- 5.7 If the Secretary of State has cause to serve a notice on the Company under section 165 of the Education Act 2002 and a determination (from which all rights of appeal have been exhausted) has been made that the Academy shall be struck off the Register of Independent Schools, the period of twelve months notice referred to in clause 5.6 may be shortened to a period deemed appropriate by the Secretary of State.
- 5.8 The Secretary of State shall, at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide to the Company an indication of the level of funding to

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

be provided by the Secretary of State to the Company by way of GAG and EAG in the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Indicative Funding**”). If the Company is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Indicative Funding for the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Critical Year**”) and of the taking into account all other resources available and likely to be available to the Academy, including such funds as are set out in clause 73 of the Master Agreement and such other funds as are and likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Company (“**All Other Resources**”), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding, to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Company may give notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement at the end of the then current Academy Financial Year.

- 5.9 Any notice given by the Company under clause 5.8 shall be in writing and shall be served on the Secretary of State not later than 28 February preceding the Critical Year or, if the Secretary of State shall not have given notice of the Indicative Funding to the Company on or before the date specified in clause 5.8 above, within six weeks after the Secretary of State shall have done so. The notice must specify:
- 5.9.1. the grounds upon which the Company’s opinion is based and include the evidence of those grounds and any professional accounting advice the Company has received and including a detailed statement of steps which the Company proposes to take with a view to ensuring that as soon as reasonably practicable the costs of running the Academy are reduced sufficiently to ensure that such costs are less than the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and
 - 5.9.2. the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Company to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and
 - 5.9.3. a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the “**Projected Budget**”).

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

- 5.10 Both parties undertake to use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and undertake to use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.
- 5.11 If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or such other date as may be agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources would cause the Company to become insolvent, then that question shall be referred to an independent expert (the “**Expert**”) for resolution. The Expert’s determination shall be final and binding on both parties. The Expert shall be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the “**Shortfall**”). The Expert shall be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert shall be appointed by the President for the time being of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.12 The Expert shall be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of large schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist shall be appointed by the Chairman for the time being of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust. The educational specialist’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.13 If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State shall not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Company shall be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August prior to the Critical Year. Any such notice shall be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert’s determination shall have

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State shall have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

- 5.14 If the Company shall have given notice to terminate the Agreement under 5.13, the Secretary of State may by notice in writing to the Company require the Company to appoint up to two persons as directors of the Company in accordance with the Articles.
- 5.15 The Secretary of State may at any time by notice in writing terminate this Agreement forthwith if the Academy has ceased (except where such cessation occurs temporarily by reason of an event beyond the reasonable control of the Company) to operate as an Academy within the meaning of Section 1 of the Academies Act 2010.
- 5.16 A "Special Measures Termination Event Occurs" when:
- 5.16.1. the Chief Inspector gives a notice to the Company in accordance with section 13(3) of the Education Act 2005 (the "Special Measures Notice") stating that in his opinion special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy; and
 - 5.16.2. the Chief Inspector carries out a subsequent inspection of the Academy in accordance with the Education Act 2005 and makes a report in accordance with the Education Act 2005 stating that the Academy has made inadequate progress since the date of the Special Measures Notice; and
 - 5.16.3. the Secretary of State shall have requested the Company to deliver within 10 Business Days a written statement (a "Further Action Statement") of the action the Company proposes to take, and the period within which it proposes to take such action, or, if it does not propose to take any action, the reasons for not doing so; and
 - 5.16.4. the Secretary of State, having considered the Further Action Statement, is not satisfied that any action proposed to be taken by the Company is sufficient in all the circumstances, or, if no Further Action Statement shall have been given to the Secretary of State within the requested timeframe or otherwise.
- 5.17 If a Special Measures Termination Event occurs, the Secretary of State may:

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

5.17.1.by notice in writing to the Company terminate this Agreement forthwith; or

5.17.2.subject to clause 102 of the Master Agreement, appoint such Further Directors to the Company as he thinks fit in accordance with the Articles and/or may provide up to 12 months' notice in writing to terminate this Agreement.

5.18 In the event that the Secretary of State appoints Further Directors in accordance with clause 5.17.2, the Company must, upon the request of the Secretary of State, procure the resignation of the Directors appointed in accordance with Article 50 of the Articles of Association.

6 EFFECT OF TERMINATION

6.1 In the event of termination of this Agreement however occurring, the school shall cease to be an Academy within the meaning of Section 1 of the Academies Act 2010.

6.2 Subject to clause 6.3, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement for reasons other than that a Special Measure Termination Event occurs, the Academy no longer has the characteristics set out in clause 12 of the Master Agreement, or is no longer meeting the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement or that the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement, the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Company.

6.3 The amount of any such indemnity shall be determined by the Secretary of State having regard to any representations made to him by the Company, and shall be paid at such times and in such manner as the Secretary of State may reasonably think fit.

6.4 The categories of expenditure incurred by the Company in consequence of the termination of the Agreement in respect of which the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Company include (but not by way of limitation), staff compensation and redundancy payments, compensation payments in respect of broken contracts, expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes, legal and other professional fees, and dissolution expenses.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

- 6.5 Subject to clause 6.6, on the termination of this Agreement however occurring, the Company shall in respect of any of its capital assets at the date of termination:
- (a) promptly transfer a proportion of the assets to a person nominated by the Secretary of State, if the Secretary of State considers that all or some of those assets need to be used for educational purposes by that nominee. The proportion of the assets to be transferred shall be the same as the proportion of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later; or
 - (b) if the Secretary of State confirms that a transfer under clause 6.5(a) is not required, promptly repay to the Secretary of State a sum equivalent to the percentage of the value of the assets at the date of termination, or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of subsequent disposal of those assets. Such percentage to be the same as the percentage of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later.
- 6.6 The Secretary of State may waive in whole or in part the repayment due under clause 6.5(b) if:
- a) The Company obtains his permission to invest the proceeds of sale for its charitable objects; or
 - b) The Secretary of State directs all or part of the repayment to be paid to the L A.
- 6.7 The sale or disposal by other means of publicly funded land held for the purposes of an Academy is now governed by Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

Restrictions on Land transfer

- 6A Recognising that they are or will be receiving publicly funded land at nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent) the Company:

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

a) shall, within 28 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry for a restriction in the proprietorship register (under section 43(1)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002 in Form RX1 as prescribed by Rule 91 and Schedule 4 of the Land Registration Rules 2003) in the following terms:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT

b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,

c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,

d) in the event that it has not registered the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a), hereby consents to the entering of the restriction referred to in 6A(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (under s. 43(1)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),

d) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a restriction entered in accordance with clause 6A(a) or 6A(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Company.

7 ANNEX

7.1 The Annex to this Agreement forms part of and is incorporated into this Agreement.

8 THE MASTER AGREEMENT

Except as expressly provided in this Agreement the Master Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

9 ENGLISH LAW

9.1 This Agreement shall be governed by and interpreted in accordance with English law.

Executed on behalf of Equitas Academies Trust by:

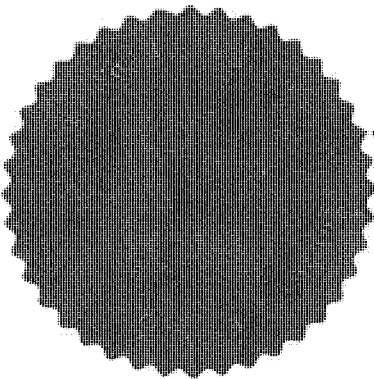


Director



Director/Secretary

The Corporate Seal of the Secretary of State for Education, hereunto affixed is authenticated by:





Duly Authorised

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

ANNEX TO THIS SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

Requirements for the Admission for pupils at the

Academy

Annex 1

Annex 1

REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ADMISSION OF PUPILS TO CHILWELL CROFT ACADEMY

GENERAL

1. This annex may be amended in writing at any time by agreement between the Secretary of State and the Company.

2. Except as provided in paragraphs 2A to 2B below the Company will act in accordance with, and will ensure that an Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, all relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code, and the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education ("the Codes") as they apply at any given time to maintained schools and with equalities law and the law on admissions as they apply to maintained schools. For this purpose, reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" shall be deemed to be references to the Directors of the Company.

2A The Company is permitted to determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in accordance with the School Admissions Code) that give priority for admission (but not above looked after children and previously looked after children⁴) to other children attracting the pupil premium, including the service premium ('the pupil premium admission criterion'). Where a Company exercises this freedom it will provide information in its admission arrangements of eligibility for the premiums.

2B For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:

- any personal details about their financial status; or
- whether parents are serving in the armed forces (of any nation), stationed in England, and exercising parental care and responsibility

⁴ As defined in the School Admissions Code.

Multi Academy Model Mainstream

for the child in question.

3. Notwithstanding the generality of paragraph 2 of this Annex, the Company will participate in the co-ordinated admission arrangements operated by the Local Authority (LA) and the local Fair Access Protocol.
4. Notwithstanding any provision in this Annex, the Secretary of State may:
 - (a) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to Chilwell Croft Academy on application from an LA. This will include complying with a School Attendance Order⁵. Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Company;
 - (b) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to Chilwell Croft Academy if the Company has failed to act in accordance with this Annex or has otherwise failed to comply with applicable admissions and equalities legislation or the provisions of the Codes;
 - (c) direct the Company to amend its admission arrangements where they fail to comply with the School Admissions Code or the School Admission Appeals Code.
5. The Company shall ensure that parents and 'relevant children'⁶ will have the right of appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Company. The Independent Appeal Panel will be independent of the Company. The arrangements for appeals will comply with the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education as it applies to Foundation and Voluntary Aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

⁵ Local authorities are able to issue school attendance orders if a child is not attending school. These are legally binding upon parents. Such an order might, for instance, be appropriate where a child has a place at an Academy but his/her parents are refusing to send him/her to school. The order will require a parent to ensure his/her child attends a specified school.

⁶ 'relevant children' means:

- a) in the case of appeals for entry to a sixth form, the child, and;
- b) in any other case, children who are above compulsory school age, or will be above compulsory school age by the time they start to receive education at the school.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

Relevant Area

6. Subject to paragraph 7, the meaning of “Relevant Area” for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the local authority for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

7. If the Company does not consider the relevant area determined by the local authority for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Company and the LA in which the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.

Requirement to admit pupils

8. Pupils on roll in any predecessor maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at any predecessor school will be admitted.

9. The Company will:

- a. subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State in relation to a named pupil, admit all pupils with a statement of special educational needs naming the Academy;
- b. determine admission oversubscription criteria for the Academy that give highest priority to looked after children and previously looked after children, in accordance with the relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code.

Oversubscription criteria, admission number, consultation, determination and objections.

10. The Academy admission arrangements will include oversubscription criteria, and an admission number for each relevant age group⁷. The Company will consult on the Academy’s admission arrangements and

⁷ ‘Relevant age group’ means ‘normal point of admission to the school, for example, year R, Year7 and Year 12.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

determine them in line with the requirements within the School Admissions Code.

11. The Office of the School's Adjudicator (OSA) will consider objections to the Academy's admission arrangements⁸. The Company should therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy's admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA.

12. A determination of an objection by the OSA will be binding upon the Academy and the Company will make appropriate changes as quickly as possible.

⁸ The OSA has no jurisdiction to consider objections against the agreed variation from the Codes set out in paragraphs 2A and 2B.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

Schedule 4

**Amended Master Funding Agreement_made pursuant to this
Deed of Variation dated 2014**

Multi Model
(Mainstream Academies, Special Academies and Alternative Provision Academies)

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT

4 September 2012

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST
MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT

CONTENTS:

SECTION	CLAUSE NO
INTRODUCTION	1 – 10
LEGAL AGREEMENT	11
REQUIREMENTS OF A MAINSTREAM ACADEMY	12
THE SEN OBLIGATIONS	12A
ALTERNATIVE PROVISION ACADEMY REQUIREMENTS	12B
CONDITIONS OF GRANT	
General	13
Governance	14-15
Conduct	16
Disclosure and Barring Service Checks	17-17A
Pupils	18-18AAA
Designated Teacher for Looked after Children	18A
Teachers and other staff	19-22A
Curriculum, curriculum development and delivery and RE and collective worship	23-29A
Assessment	30-30B
Exclusions Agreement	31
School meals	32-33
Charging	34
International Education Surveys	34A

Pupil Premium	34B
DURATION OF THE SCHOOL DAY AND YEAR	34C
GRANTS TO BE PAID BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE	
General	35-36
Capital Grant	37-40
Arrangements for Payment of Capital Grant	41
General Annual Grant (GAG)	41A-54O
Earmarked Annual Grant (EAG)	55-56
Arrangements for payment of GAG and EAG	57-61
Other relevant funding	62-65
FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS	
General	66-80A
Borrowing Powers	81-82
Disposal of Assets	83-89
TERMINATION	
General	90-93
Change of Control of the Company	93A-94
GENERAL	
Information	95-96
Access by Secretary of State's Officers	97-99
Notices	100-101
Complaints	102 – 102F
General	103-108
SCHEDULE 1	
Model Supplemental Funding Agreement for a Mainstream Academy	
Model Supplemental Funding Agreement for a Special Academy	

Model Supplemental Funding Agreement for an Alternative Provision Academy

ANNEXES TO THE MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT

Articles of the Company	Annex A
Arrangements for pupils with SEN and disabilities at each Academy – for Mainstream Academies and Alternative Provision Academies only	Annex B

INTRODUCTION

- 1) This Agreement is made under Section 1 of the Academies Act 2010, between the Secretary of State for Education ("the Secretary of State") and Equitas Academies Trust (the "Company").
- 2) The Company is a company incorporated in England and Wales, limited by guarantee with registered Company number 07662289.
- 3) The Company intends to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of a number of Academies in accordance with this Agreement and the Supplemental Agreements.
- 4) This Agreement and the Supplemental Agreements will apply in respect of an Academy from such time as a Supplemental Agreement relating to that Academy shall have been entered into between the Secretary of State and the Company.
- 5) The following expressions used in this Agreement have the respective meanings assigned to them by the numbered clauses of this Agreement referred to immediately after the reference to the expressions -
 - a) "Academies Financial Handbook" - clause 67;
 - b) "Accounting Officer" – clause 66;
 - c) "Annual Letter of Funding" - clause 60;
 - d) "GAG" – clause 36;
 - e) "Capital Expenditure" - clause 37;
 - f) "Capital Grant" – clause 37;
 - g) "EAG" - clause 36;
 - h) "Local Governing Body" – clause 15;
 - i) "Recurrent Expenditure" – clause 36;

j) “Start-up Period” – clause 50;

6) In this Agreement the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:-

“Academy Financial Year” means the year from 1st September to 31st August or such other period as the Secretary of State may from time to time specify by notice in writing to the Company;

“Academy” means a Mainstream Academy, an Alternative Provision Academy or a Special Academy in respect of which a Supplemental Agreement has been entered into between the Secretary of State and the Company and the expression “Academies” shall refer to all or any of such Academies;

“admission requirements” – are annexed to the relevant Supplemental Agreement;

“Alternative Provision Academy” means an Academy which meets the requirements set out in section 1C of the Academies Act 2010;

the “Articles” means the Articles of Association of the Company for the time being in force;

“this Agreement” means this agreement and its annexes and a reference in this Agreement to a numbered clause or annex is a reference to the clause or annex of this Agreement bearing that number or letter as the same may be amended or supplemented from time to time;

“Business Day” means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a day which is a bank holiday with the meaning given to that expression in the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971;

“Commissioner” means local authorities and/or schools referring children/pupils to the Alternative Provision Academy for admission under the legal powers set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;

“Control” in relation to a body corporate (‘Entity’) means either the legal or beneficial ownership of 30 per cent or more of the issued shares in the Entity ordinarily having voting rights or the power of a person (‘A’) otherwise to secure –

- (a) either by means of the holding of shares in that Entity or having an interest conferring voting rights at general meetings of the membership of the Entity or of any other body corporate;
- (b) by virtue or any powers conferred by the Articles or other document regulating that Entity or any other Entity or partnership including, without limitation, the power to appoint or remove a majority of the directors thereof, or
- (c) by virtue of any agreement, understanding or arrangement between any person or persons,

that the affairs of the first-mentioned Entity are conducted in accordance with the wishes of A and ‘Controls’ shall be construed accordingly;

“DfE” means Department for Education and any successor;

“LA” means the Local Authority in the area in which the relevant Academy is situated;

“Mainstream Academy” means an Academy meeting the requirements referred to in clause 12;

“Memorandum” means the memorandum of association of the Company for the time being in force;

“parents” means parents or guardians;

“persons” includes a body of persons, corporate or incorporate;

“Principal” means the head teacher of an Academy;

“Principal Regulator” means the body or person appointed as the Principal Regulator under the Charities Act 2011;

“Pupil Referral Unit” means any school established in England and maintained by a local authority which is specially organised to provide education for children falling within section 19(1) of the Education Act 1996;

references to “school” shall where the context so admits be references to an Academy;

“SEN” means special educational needs, and the expressions “special educational needs” and “special educational provision” have the meaning set out in section 312 of the Education Act 1996;

“SENCO” means Special Educational Needs Co-ordinator;

“Special Academy” means an Academy specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with SEN;

“Statement of SEN” means a statement made under section 324 of the Education Act 1996; and

“Supplemental Agreement” means an agreement supplemental to this Agreement, substantially in the form set out in Schedule 1 to this Agreement to be entered into by the Secretary of State and the Company pursuant to which the Company agrees to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on, and the Secretary of State agrees to fund, an Academy in accordance with the terms and conditions of that Supplemental Agreement and this Agreement.

7) The Interpretation Act 1978 shall apply for the interpretation of this Agreement and any Supplemental Agreement as it applies for the interpretation of an Act of Parliament.

8) Expressions defined in this Agreement shall have the same meaning where used in any Annex to this Agreement or Supplemental Agreement.

9) Questions arising on the interpretation of the arrangements in this Agreement shall be resolved by the Secretary of State after consultation with the Company.

10) Section 1 (3) of the Academies Act 2010 states that -

(3) An Academy agreement is an agreement between the Secretary of State and the other party under which -

(a) the other party gives the undertakings in subsection (5), and

(b) the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to the other party in consideration of those undertakings."

LEGAL AGREEMENT

11) In consideration of the Company undertaking to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of a number of schools / independent schools in England specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with SEN ("**the Special Academies**") or meeting the requirements referred to in clause 12 ("**the Mainstream Academies**"), or meeting such requirements as referred to in clause 12B ("**the Alternative Provision Academies**"), the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to the Company in accordance with the conditions and requirements set out in this Agreement and Supplemental Agreements. If it is agreed between the Secretary of State and the Company that the Company will establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of an Academy, the parties will enter into a Supplemental Agreement in relation to that Academy. For the avoidance of doubt, any obligations imposed upon or powers given to an Academy by this Agreement or any Supplemental Agreement are also imposed upon the Company.

REQUIREMENTS OF A MAINSTREAM ACADEMY

12) The requirements of a **Mainstream Academy** are those set down in Section 1A of the Academies Act 2010¹.

¹ Any Supplemental Funding Agreement entered into in relation to an Academy which is a "selective school" within the meaning of Section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010 will clarify that section 1A(1)(c) (requirement to provide education for pupils of different abilities) will not apply.

THE SEN OBLIGATIONS

12A) In respect of **Special Academies**:

- a) The Company must comply with all of the obligations imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained special schools in Chapter 1 of Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 and in Regulations in force at the date of this agreement or made from time to time under any provision in that Chapter (as amended from time to time²).
- b) Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement, the Secretary of State may (whether following a complaint made to him or otherwise) direct the Company to comply with an obligation imposed by this Agreement where the Company has failed to comply with any such obligation.
- c) The Company must ensure that each Academy's website includes details of the arrangements for the admission of disabled pupils; the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being treated less favourably than other pupils; the facilities provided to assist access to the Academy by disabled pupils; and the plan prepared by the Company under paragraph 3 of Schedule 10 to the Equality Act 2010. Disabled pupils in this paragraph mean pupils who are disabled for the purposes of the Equality Act 2010³.

ALTERNATIVE PROVISION ACADEMY REQUIREMENTS

12B) The Alternative Provision Academy requirements are those set down in Section 1C of the Academies Act 2010.

CONDITIONS OF GRANT

² Currently these duties are in section 313 (Duty to have regard to the Special Educational Needs Code of Practice 2001); section 317(5), (6) and (6A) (Duties in relation to the publication of information relating to arrangements and facilities for disabled pupils at the school); and 324(5)(b) (Duty to admit the child where a school is named in the statement); and the Education (Special Educational Needs)(Information)(England) Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/2506). For the avoidance of doubt, the obligations in clause 12A of this agreement are in addition to any obligations imposed upon Academy proprietors directly in legislation or regulations.

³ This obligation is in addition to the obligation to comply with the duties to publish information imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained special schools set out in the Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 (as amended from time to time) which clause 12A has the effect of imposing.

General

13) Other conditions and requirements in respect of an Academy, unless specified otherwise in a Supplemental Agreement, are that:

- a) the school will be at the heart of its community, promoting community cohesion and sharing facilities with other schools and the wider community;
- b) there will be assessments of pupils' performance as they apply to maintained schools (this will also apply to **Alternative Provision Academies** unless there are exceptional reasons to do otherwise), and the opportunity to study for qualifications in accordance with clause 30 (d);
- c) in respect of **Mainstream Academies**, the admissions policy and arrangements for the school will be in accordance with admissions law, and the DfE Codes of Practice, as they apply to maintained schools, and in respect of **Alternative Provision Academies** the admissions policy and arrangements for the school will be set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;
- d) teachers' levels of pay and conditions of service will be the responsibility of the Company;
- e) there will be an emphasis on the needs of the individual pupils including pupils with SEN, both those with and without statements of SEN;
- f) there will be no charge to pupils (or their parents or guardians) in respect of admission to, or attendance at, the school and the school will only charge pupils where the law allows maintained schools to charge;
- g) the Company shall as soon as reasonably practicable establish an appropriate mechanism for the receipt and management of donations and shall use reasonable endeavours to procure donations through that mechanism for the purpose of the objects specified in the Articles.

13A) Clause 13f) does not prevent the Company receiving funds from a local authority or a charity in respect of the admission of a pupil with special educational needs to an Academy.

13B) Clause 13 f) does not prevent the Company receiving funds/income from Commissioners in respect of the admission and attendance of a pupil at the **Alternative Provision Academy**.

Governance

14) Each Academy will be governed by the Company. The Company shall have regard to (but for the avoidance of doubt shall not be bound by) any guidance as to the governance of Academies that the Secretary of State may publish.

15) The Company shall establish, for each Academy, an Advisory Body, whose role shall be to provide advice to the Company in relation to the functioning of that Academy. The role of the Advisory Body and the membership of it shall be for the Company to decide, but the Company will, as a minimum, ensure that:

- a) a minimum of two parents of a pupil at the Academy (to be elected by the parents of registered pupils of the Academy) shall be a member of the Advisory Body;
- d) any advice of the Advisory Body is brought to the attention of the Directors of the Company;
- e) to the extent that the Company may, in accordance with the Articles, choose to establish a Local Governing Body, then the Company may additionally constitute the Advisory Body as the Academy's Local Governing Body.

Conduct

16) Each Academy shall be conducted in accordance with:

- a) the Articles;
- b) all provisions by or under statute which confer rights or impose obligations on Academies including, without limitation, the independent schools standards prescribed under section 157 of the Education Act 2002 to the extent they apply to the Academy;
- c) the terms of this Agreement and the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

Disclosure and Barring Service Checks

17) The Company shall comply with the requirements of the Education (Independent School Standards) (England) Regulations 2010 (or such regulations as may for some time being be applicable) in relation to carrying out enhanced criminal records checks, obtaining enhanced criminal records certificates and making any further checks, as required and appropriate for members of staff, supply staff, individual Directors and the Chair of the Local Governing Body.

17A) The Company shall, on receipt of a copy of an enhanced criminal record certificate, on request from the Secretary of State or his agents, as soon as possible thereafter submit information contained in the certificate to the Secretary of State in accordance with section 124 of the Police Act 1997.

Pupils

18) Each **Mainstream Academy** will be an all ability inclusive⁴ school whose requirements for:

- a) the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;
- b) the admission to the Academy of and support for pupils with SEN and with disabilities (for pupils who have and who do not have statements of SEN) are set out in Annex B to this Agreement;
- c) pupil exclusions are set out in regulations made by virtue of section 51A of the Education Act 2002 (as may be amended or modified from time to time, and includes any successor provisions).

18AAA) Each **Special Academy** will be a special school whose requirements for:

⁴ If one of the Mainstream Academies is a "selective school" within the meaning of Section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010 then the Supplemental Funding Agreement for that Academy will provide that that Academy is not required to be an all ability inclusive school.

- a) the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;
- b) pupil exclusions are set out in regulations made by virtue of section 51A of the Education Act 2002 (as may be amended or modified from time to time, and includes any successor provisions).

18AA) Each **Alternative Provision Academy** will provide education for the cohort of pupils whose characteristics are set out in the requirements at section 1C of the Academies Act and whose requirements for:

- a) the admission of pupils to the Alternative Provision Academy are set out in the relevant annex to the Supplemental Agreement;
- b) the admission to the Alternative Provision Academy of and support for pupils with SEN and with disabilities (for pupils who have and who do not have statements of SEN) are set out in Annex B to this Agreement;
- c) pupil exclusions are set out in regulations made by virtue of section 51A of the Education Act 2002 (as may be amended or modified from time to time, and includes any successor provision(s)).

Designated Teacher for Looked after Children

18A) The Company will in respect of each Academy act in accordance with, and be bound by, all relevant statutory and regulatory provisions and have regard to any guidance and codes of practice issued pursuant to such provisions, as they apply at any time to a maintained school, relating to the designation of a person to manage the teaching and learning programme for children who are looked after by an LA and are registered pupils at the school. For the purpose of this clause, any reference to the governing body of a maintained school in such statutory and regulatory provisions, or in any guidance and code of practice issued pursuant to such provisions, shall be deemed to be references to the Directors of the Company.

Teachers and other staff

19) In respect of **Mainstream and Alternative Provision Academies**:

a) subject to clause 19(b), the Company shall, in accordance with any guidance which the Secretary of State may issue on the qualifications of teaching and other staff in Academies, employ anyone it deems is suitably qualified or is otherwise eligible under a contract of employment or for services to carry out planning and preparing lessons and courses for pupils, delivering lessons to pupils, assessing the development, progress and attainment of pupils, and reporting on the development, progress and attainment of pupils.

b) clause 19(a) does not apply to anyone who:

- i) is appointed as the SENCO by the Company under section 317(3A) of the Education Act 1996, who must meet the requirements set out in Regulation 3 of the Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) Regulations 2008 (SI 2008/2945); or
- ii) is appointed as a designated teacher for looked after children further to clause 18A.

20) In respect of **Special Academies**, subject to clause 20A, the Company shall not employ anyone under a contract of employment or for services to carry out planning and preparing lessons and courses for pupils, delivering lessons to pupils, assessing the development, progress and attainment of pupils, and reporting on the development, progress and attainment of pupils ("specified work") who is not either:-

- a) a qualified teacher within the meaning of regulations made under section 132 of the Education Act 2002; or
- b) otherwise eligible to do specified work under the Education (Specified Work) (England) Regulations 2012 (SI 2012/762), which for the purpose of this clause shall be construed as if the relevant Academy were a maintained school.

20A) Clause 20 does not apply to anyone who:

- a) was transferred to the employment of the Company by virtue of the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006; and
- b) immediately prior to the transfer, was employed to do specified work; and
- c) immediately prior to the transfer, was not;
 - i) a qualified teacher within the meaning of regulations made under section 132 of the Education Act 2002 and registered with full registration with the appropriate body, or
 - ii) eligible to do specified work under the Education (Specified Work) (England) Regulations 2012 (SI 2012/762)

(a “transferred staff member”). The Company shall use its best endeavours to ensure that any transferred staff member who undertakes specified work and does not meet the requirements of either clause 20(a) or clause 20(b) meets such requirements as soon as possible.

21) The Company shall ensure that all teachers employed at each Academy have access to the Teachers’ Pension Scheme and, in so doing, will comply with the statutory provisions underlying the scheme.

22) The Company shall ensure that all employees at each Academy other than teachers have access to the Local Government Pension Scheme in accordance with the Local Government Pension Scheme (Administration) Regulations 2008 (SI 2008/239) (or such other regulations as may for the time being be applicable).

22A) Where a teacher employed at an Academy applies for a teaching post at another Academy, 16 to 19 Academy, maintained school, school maintained by a local authority or institution within the further education sector, the Company must at the request of the governing body or Academy Trust of that other educational institution:

- a) advise in writing whether or not, in the preceding two years, there has been any formal consideration of that teacher’s capability to perform their role at the Academy, or the school the Academy replaced; and

- b) provide written details of the concerns which gave rise to any such consideration of that teacher's capability, the duration of the proceedings and their outcome.

Curriculum, curriculum development and delivery and RE and collective worship

23) The curriculum provided by each Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced.

23A) Not used.

23B) The Company shall publish information in relation to the current curriculum provision at each Academy. Such information shall include details relating to:

- a) the content of the curriculum;
- b) its approach to the curriculum;
- c) the GCSE options (and other Key Stage 4 qualifications) or other future qualifications, as specified by the Secretary of State, offered by each Academy;
- d) the names of any phonics or reading schemes in operation for Key Stage 1; and
- e) how parents (including prospective parents) and Commissioners can obtain further information in relation to the curriculum at each Academy.

23C) Subject to the requirements of clauses 23, 23B and 24 to 29A, the curriculum will be the responsibility of the Company.

24) In respect of **Mainstream and Special Academies**, the Company shall ensure that the broad and balanced curriculum includes English, mathematics and science, and in respect of **Alternative Provision Academies** shall insure that the broad and balanced curriculum includes English and mathematics.

24A) Sections 42A (provision of careers guidance) and 45A (guidance as to discharge of duties) of the Education Act 1997 shall be deemed to apply to each Academy with the following modifications:

- a) each Academy shall be treated as falling within the meaning of “a school” under section 42A (2);
- b) the Company shall be deemed to be the “responsible authorities” for the purposes of subsection 42A(3); and
- c) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at each Academy.

25) The Company shall make provision for the teaching of religious education and for a daily act of collective worship at each **Mainstream** Academy.

26) Where a **Mainstream Academy** is designated with a religious character⁵ in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010:

- a) subject to clause 28, and paragraph 4 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 which shall apply as if the Academy were a voluntary aided school with a religious character, the Company shall ensure that provision is made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the tenets of the specified religion or religious denomination of the Academy;
- b) subject to clause 28, the Company shall comply with the requirements of section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a foundation school with a religious character or a voluntary school, and as if references to 'the required collective worship' were references to collective worship in accordance with the tenets and practices of the specified religion or religious denomination of the Academy;
- c) the Company shall ensure that the quality of religious education given to pupils at the Academy and the contents of the Academy's collective worship given in accordance with the tenets and practice of the specific religion or

⁵ Alternative provisions are available and would be potentially appropriate for non-denominational faith schools.

religious denomination are inspected. Such inspection shall be conducted by a person chosen by the Company and the Academy shall secure that such inspection shall comply with the requirements set out in any statutory provision and regulations as if the Academy were a foundation or voluntary school which has been designated under section 69(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as having a religious character.

27) Where a **Mainstream Academy** has not been designated with a religious character in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to Section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010:

- a) subject to clause 28, the Company shall ensure that provision shall be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996 and paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;
- b) subject to clause 28, the Company shall ensure that the Academy complies with the requirements of section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if it were a community, foundation or voluntary school which does not have a religious character, except that the provisions of paragraph 4 of that Schedule do not apply. The Academy may apply to the Secretary of State for consent to be relieved of the requirement imposed by paragraph 3(2) of that Schedule, the Secretary of State's consent to such an application not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed;
- c) the Company⁶:
 - (1) agrees that before making an application pursuant to the Religious Character of Schools (Designation Procedure) (Independent Schools) (England) Regulations 2003 for each Academy to be designated as a school

⁶ This is required in order to ensure that the process by which an Academy becomes designated as a school with a religious character is comparable to that which applies for maintained schools.

with religious character it shall seek the prior written consent of the Secretary of State⁷;

(2) hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State may in his absolute discretion refuse or consent to the Company making such an application.

27AAA) Where a **Mainstream Academy** is listed in the Register of Independent Schools as having a religious ethos, but has not been designated with a religious character in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to Section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010, the Company agrees that paragraph 5(b) of Schedule 11 of the Equality Act 2010 shall not apply to the Academy.

27AA) The Company may make provision for the teaching of religious education and for a daily act of collective worship at each **Alternative Provision Academy**.

27A) Where an **Alternative Provision Academy** does (at its discretion in accordance with clause 27AA) make provision for the teaching of religious education and/or for a daily act of collective worship at the Alternative Provision Academy then:

- a) subject to clause 28, the Company shall ensure that any such provision shall be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Alternative Provision Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996 and paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;
- b) subject to clause 28, the Company shall ensure that the Alternative Provision Academy complies with the requirements of section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if it were a community, foundation or voluntary school which does not have a religious character, except that the provisions of paragraph 4 of that Schedule do not apply. The Alternative Provision Academy may apply to the Secretary of

⁷ The Company must undertake consultation on the proposal for designation prior to seeking the Secretary of State's consent.

State for consent to be relieved of the requirement imposed by paragraph 3(2) of that Schedule, the Secretary of State's consent to such an application not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

28) Section 71(1) – (6) and (8) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 shall apply as if each Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if references to “religious education” and to “religious worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by each Academy in accordance with clauses 26 or 27 as appropriate.

28A) The Company shall, so far as practical, make provision for the teaching of religious education and for acts of collective worship at each **Special Academy**.

28B) In respect of RE and collective worship at **Special Academies**:

a) subject to clause 28Bc), the Company shall ensure that provision shall be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996 and paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;

b) The Company shall ensure that each Special Academy complies with the requirements of regulation 5A of the Education (Special Educational Needs) (England) (Consolidation) Regulations 2001 as if it were a maintained special school.

c) Regulation 5A of the Education (Special Educational Needs) (England) (Consolidation) Regulations 2001 shall apply as if the Academy were a community or foundation special school, and as if references to “religious education” and to “religious worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with this clause.

28C) Where a **Special Academy** is listed in the Register of Independent Schools as having a religious ethos, the Company agrees that paragraph 5(b) of Schedule 11 of the Equality Act 2010 shall not apply to the Academy.

29) The Company shall have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State, further to section 403 of the Education Act 1996, on sex and relationship education to ensure that children at each Academy are protected from inappropriate teaching materials and they learn the nature of marriage and its importance for family life and for bringing up children. The Company shall also have regard to the requirements set out in section 405 of the Education Act 1996 which shall apply to each Academy as if it were a maintained school.

29A The Company agrees to act in accordance with Sections 406 (Political Indoctrination) and 407 (Duty to secure balance treatment of political issues) of the Education Act 1996 as if it were a maintained school, subject to the following modifications:

- a) references to any maintained school shall be treated as references to each Academy;
- b) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at each Academy;
- c) references to the governing body or the local authority shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Company; and
- d) references to the head teacher shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Principal of each Academy⁸.

Assessment

30) The Secretary of State will notify the appropriate body for assessment purposes about each Academy.

- a) The Company shall ensure that each **Mainstream Academy** and each **Special Academy** complies with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time to ensure that pupils take part in assessments and in teacher assessments of pupils' performance as they apply to maintained

⁸ Please also see the Charity Commission guidance (CC9): "Speaking out: Guidance on Campaigning and Political Activities by Charities" <http://www.charity-commission.gov.uk/Publications/cc9.aspx>

schools; and the Company shall also do so for each **Alternative Provision Academy** unless there are exceptional reasons to do otherwise.

- b) The Company shall report to any body on assessments under clause 30 as the Secretary of State shall require and shall provide such information as may be required by that body as applies to maintained schools.
- c) In respect of all Key Stages, the Company will submit each Academy to monitoring and moderation of its assessment arrangements as required by the Secretary of State.
- d) In relation to courses of education or training at an Academy which are funded from its GAG, the Company may offer:
 - (i) any course of education or training which leads to a qualification that is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 96 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000; and
 - (ii) any course of education or training not falling within paragraph (i) if the Secretary of State gives his specific written approval for it.

30A) Subject to clause 30B, the Company shall ensure that the following information is published on the website for each **Mainstream Academy**, for each **Alternative Provision Academy**, and where relevant for each **Special Academy**:

- a) **If Applicable:** The school's most recent Key Stage 2 results as published by the Secretary of State under the following column headings in the School Performance Tables published on the Department for Education's website:
 - (i) "% achieving Level 4 or above in English and maths";
 - (ii) "% making expected progress";
 - (iii) in relation to English, "% achieving Level 5 or above"; and
 - (iv) in relation to maths, "% achieving Level 5 or above".
- b) **If Applicable:** The school's most recent Key Stage 4 results as published by the Secretary of State under the following column headings in the School

Performance Tables published on the Department for Education's website:

- (i) "% achieving 5 + A* - C GCSEs (or equivalent) including English and maths GCSEs";
 - (ii) "% achieving the English Baccalaureate"; and
 - (iii) "% of pupils making expected progress".
- c) Information as to where and by what means the most recent report about the school published by the Chief Inspector may be accessed.
- d) Information as to where and by what means the School Performance Tables published by the Secretary of State on the Department for Education's website may be accessed.

30B) There is no requirement to publish information under clause 30A if to do so would be in breach of the Company's obligations under the Data Protection Act 1998.

Exclusions Agreement

31) In respect of **Mainstream Academies**, the Company shall, if invited to do so by an LA, enter into an agreement in respect of an Academy with that LA, which has the effect that where:

- a) the Company admits a pupil to the Academy who has been permanently excluded from a maintained school, the Academy itself or another Academy with whom the LA has a similar agreement; or
- b) the Company permanently excludes a pupil from the Academy;

payment will flow between the Company and the LA in the same direction and for the same amount that it would, were the Academy a maintained school, under Regulations made under section 47 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 relating to the addition or deduction of a maintained school's budget following a permanent exclusion or the admission of a permanently excluded

pupil. At the date of this Agreement, the applicable Regulation is Regulation 23 of the School and Early Years Finance (England) Regulations 2012.

School Meals

32) The Company shall, if requested to do so by or on behalf of any pupils at any Academy, provide school lunches for those pupils unless it would be unreasonable for it to do so. Subject to the provisions of clause 33 charges may be levied for lunches, but the Company shall otherwise fund the cost of such school lunches from its GAG for **Mainstream Academies**, or from its resources for **Special Academies** and for **Alternative Provision Academies**.

33) In relation to a pupil who is himself or whose parents are in receipt of benefits mentioned in section 512ZB of the Education Act 1996 (or equivalent provision governing the entitlement to free school lunches of pupils at maintained schools), the Company shall ensure that a school lunch is provided for such a pupil free of charge to be funded by the Company.

Charging

34) Sections 402 (obligation to enter pupils for public examinations), 450 - 457 (charges), 459 (regulations about information about charges and school hours), 460 (voluntary contributions), 461 (recovery of sums as civil debt) and 462 (interpretation re charges) of the Education Act 1996 (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any secondary legislation made further to those provisions) shall be deemed to apply to each Academy with the following modifications:

- a) references to any maintained school shall be treated as references to an Academy;
- b) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at an Academy;
- c) references to the governing body or the local authority shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Company;

- d) the Company may charge persons who are not registered pupils at an Academy for education provided or for facilities used by them at that Academy.⁹

International Education Surveys

34A) Section 538A of the Education Act 1996 (power to direct participation in international surveys) shall be deemed to apply to each Academy with the following modifications:

- (a) references to the governing body shall be treated as references to the Company; and
- (b) references to a community, foundation or voluntary school shall be treated as references to the Academy.

Pupil Premium

34B) For **Mainstream Academies**, and those **Special Academies** that receive Pupil Premium Funding¹⁰, the Company shall publish in each Academy Financial Year information in relation to:

- a) the amount of Pupil Premium allocation that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
- b) on what it intends to spend the Pupil Premium allocation;
- c) on what it spent its Pupil Premium in the previous Academy Financial Year;

⁹ For clarification, such charging is separate and distinct from any arrangement that the Company may make with Commissioners concerning the referral of pupils to the **Alternative Provision Academy**.

¹⁰ The Pupil Premium is additional funding for schools to support pupils from low-income families. In instances when those pupils are in special settings, the funding can either be allocated to the setting where they are being educated, or held by the local authority to spend specifically on additional educational support to raise the standard of attainment for these pupils. The authority must consult non-mainstream settings about how the Premium for these pupils should be used. Where Pupil Premium is allocated to the Special Academy by the Local Authority, the company must publish information as set out in clause 34B. There is no requirement for Alternative Provision settings to publish such information.

- d) the impact in educational attainment, arising from expenditure of the previous Academy Financial Year's Pupil Premium.

DURATION OF SCHOOL DAY AND YEAR

34C) In respect of **Mainstream Academies and Alternative Provision Academies**, the duration of the school day and year will be the responsibility of the Company.¹¹

GRANTS TO BE PAID BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE

General

35) The Secretary of State shall pay grants towards Recurrent Expenditure and may pay grants towards Capital Expenditure for each Academy. Except with the Secretary of State's prior agreement, the Company shall not budget for its expenditure in any Academy Financial Year in excess of expected income (subject to clause 80). The Company shall not enter into commitments which are likely to have substantial implications for future levels of grant, or for the period for which grant may be required. No decision by the Company shall commit the Secretary of State to paying any particular amount of grant.

36) "Recurrent Expenditure" means any expenditure on the establishment, conduct, administration and maintenance of the Academy which does not fall within the categories of capital expenditure set out at clause 37. The Secretary of State shall pay two separate and distinct grants in respect of recurrent expenditure: General Annual Grant ("GAG") and Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG").

Capital Grant

37) "Capital Expenditure" means expenditure on:

- a) the acquisition of land and buildings;

¹¹ In respect of **Special Academies**, regulations made under section 551 of the Education Act 1996 apply (currently the Education (School Day and School Year) (England) Regulations 1999).

- b) the erection, enlargement, improvement or demolition of any building including fixed plant, installation, wall, fence or other structure, or any playground or hard standing;
- c) the installation of electrical, mechanical or other services other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- d) the purchase of vehicles and other self-propelled mechanical equipment;
- e) the installation and equipping of premises with furnishings and equipment, other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- f) the installation and equipping of premises with computers, networking for computers, operating software and information and communication technology equipment, other than necessary updates or necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- g) the provision and equipping of premises, including playing fields and other facilities for social activities and physical recreation other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- h) works of a permanent character other than the purchase or replacement of minor day-to-day items;
- i) any major repairs or replacements which are specified as constituting capital expenditure in any grant letter relating to them;
- j) such other items (whether of a like or dissimilar nature to any of the foregoing) of a substantial or enduring nature as the Secretary of State may agree shall constitute capital expenditure for the purposes of this Agreement;
- k) all professional fees properly and reasonably incurred in connection with the provision of any of the above;
- l) VAT and other taxes payable on any of the above.

“Capital Grant” means grant paid to the Company in respect of Capital Expenditure.

38) Where an Academy is to open in new premises, or where existing premises are to be substantially refurbished or remodelled to enable the Academy to open in such premises, the Secretary of State, may, in his absolute discretion be responsible for meeting the incurred Capital Expenditure for that Academy. To that end, the Secretary of State will consider providing funding in accordance with any arrangements as he considers appropriate.

39) Any Capital Expenditure incurred in respect of each Academy on which Capital Grant payments are sought from the Secretary of State will require the specific prior written agreement of the Secretary of State, which agreement shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

40) Any payment of Capital Grant to the Company under this Agreement is subject to the fulfilment of the following conditions:

- a) such grants are used solely to defray expenditure approved by the Secretary of State;
- b) the Company certifying and providing evidence that all planning and other consents necessary for the development and all related infrastructure to be completed have been obtained or put in place;
- c) Any other conditions that the Secretary of State may specify.

Arrangements for Payment of Capital Grant

41) Capital Grant will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company on the basis of claims for grant submitted to the Secretary of State in the notified format with supporting invoices and certificates as required by the Secretary of State. If a dispute arises as to whether a claim is or is not acceptable both parties undertake to attempt to resolve it in good faith. In the event of such a dispute, the Secretary of State shall pay to the Company so much of the claim as shall not be in dispute.

General Annual Grant

41A) GAG paid by the Secretary of State in respect of an Academy shall only be spent by the Company towards the normal running costs of the Academies.

42) Clauses 42A to 53 apply in respect of **Mainstream Academies** only.

42A) GAG will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company in order to cover the normal running costs of each **Mainstream Academy**. These will include, but are not limited to:

- a) teachers' salaries and related costs (including full and part time teaching staff and seconded teachers);
- b) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, educational support staff, administrative and clerical staff and manual and premises related staff);
- c) employees' expenses;
- d) the purchase, maintenance, repair and replacement:
 - (i) of teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books, stationery and ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
 - (ii) of other supplies and services;
- e) examination fees;
- f) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewerage; fuel and light (including fuel oil, solid and other fuel, electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- g) insurance;

- h) medical equipment and supplies;
- i) staff development (including in-service training);
- j) curriculum development;
- k) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school meals to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with special educational needs or disabilities (taking account of the fact that separate additional money will be available for pupils with statements of special educational needs);
- l) administration; and
- m) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.

43) Subject to clauses to 51-52, GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Mainstream Academy** will include:

- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and notified in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent, taking account of the number of pupils at each Academy;
- b) funding in respect of functions which would be carried out by the LA if each Academy was a maintained school.

44) The GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Mainstream Academy** will also include, payable on a basis equivalent to that applied to maintained schools:

- a) funding for matters for which it is necessary for that Academy to incur extra costs, for as long as those costs are deemed necessary by the Secretary of State; and
- b) payments in respect of further, specific grants made available to maintained schools, where the relevant Academy meets the requisite

conditions and criteria necessary for a maintained school to receive these grants, such payments to be at the discretion of the Secretary of State.

45) Subject to clause 47, the basis of the pupil number count for the purposes of determining GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which a **Mainstream Academy** opens shall be the same basis as that used by the Local Authority for determining the budget share of the predecessor maintained school as adjusted by numbers counted in any subsequent Schools Census, as determined by the Secretary of State.

46) Subject to clause 47 the basis of the pupil number count for the purpose of determining GAG for a **Mainstream Academy** for Academy Financial Years after the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens will be:

- a) for the pupil number count for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
- b) for the pupil number count for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which for the time being is in use for maintained schools for the calculation of pupil numbers for pupils in Year 12 and above for the purpose of calculating their level of funding.

47) Where either of the following conditions applies in respect of an Academy Financial Year, the basis of the pupil count shall be determined by the Secretary of State, taking account of any diseconomies of scale that the Academy will be under as a result of such condition(s) applying. The conditions are:

- a) not all planned Year-groups will be present at the Academy (that is, not all the pupil cohorts relevant to the age-range of the Academy will have some pupils present); or
- b) the total number of pupils as measured in the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question is less than 90% of the planned final size of the Academy, as specified in the Academy's Supplemental

Agreement, and has not at any previous time been 90% or more of that number.

48) For any Academy Financial Year in which GAG for a **Mainstream Academy** has been calculated in accordance with clause 45, no adjustment shall be made to the following Academy Financial Year's formula funding element of GAG for that Academy to recognise variation from the pupil count basis used.

49) For any Academy Financial Year in which GAG for a **Mainstream Academy** is calculated in accordance with clause 46, no adjustment will be made to the formula funding element in the following Academy Financial Year's formula funding element of GAG unless the Company demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that there has been a significant impact on balances. For any other element of GAG the Secretary of State may make adjustments to recognise a variation in pupil numbers from that used to calculate the element of grant in question; the basis of these will be set out in the annual letter of funding.

50) The Secretary of State recognises that:

- a) in relation to **Mainstream Academies** which open with intakes representing only a proportion of the final planned size of the Academy, payments based simply upon the number of pupils present are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs in the Academy Financial Years before all age groups are present at their planned size (the "Start-up Period") because of a lack of economies of scale. The Secretary of State may pay an appropriately larger GAG in the Start-up Period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 43-49, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively¹²;
- b) in relation to **Mainstream Academies** which open with pupils transferred from one or more maintained schools which have closed, additional GAG resources may be required to take account of transitional costs including any costs associated with supporting the integration of pupils from the closed

¹² Note that a larger GAG for the Start-Up Period is only applicable to Academies with approved Academy Action Plans.

schools and, where necessary, to offer a dual curriculum. If the Secretary of State has indicated that such additional GAG will be payable, the Company will make a bid for this addition to GAG based upon need and providing appropriate supporting evidence.

51) During the Start-up Period or during the period when year groups are present who have transferred from a predecessor school or schools, the Secretary of State will pay a further element of GAG additional to that calculated in accordance with the methods set out in clauses 43-49 to allow the relevant **Mainstream Academy** to:

- a) purchase a basic stock of teaching and learning materials (including library books, text books, software, stationery, science equipment and equipment for physical education) and other consumable materials;
- b) meet the costs associated with the recruitment and induction of additional teaching and other staff.

After the Start-up Period these costs will be met through the ordinary GAG.

52) The Secretary of State recognises that if he serves notice of intention to terminate a Supplemental Agreement under that agreement the intake of new pupils during the notice period is likely to decline and that in such circumstances payments based simply upon the number of pupils attending the relevant **Mainstream Academy** are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs during the notice period. The Secretary of State may undertake to pay a reasonable and appropriately larger GAG with respect to that Academy in the notice period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 43-49, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

53) The Secretary of State also recognises that if this Agreement or a Supplemental Agreement is terminated for any reason by either party the number of pupils at the relevant **Mainstream Academy or Mainstream Academies** is likely to decline. In these circumstances both parties undertake to attempt to resolve issues arising from such termination in good faith and with the aim of protecting the interests and the education of the pupils at the Academy.

54) Not used.

54AAA) Clauses 54AA to 54H apply in respect of **Special Academies** only.

54AA) GAG will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company as a contribution towards the normal running costs of each **Special Academy**. These will include, but are not limited to:

- a. teachers' salaries and related costs (including full and part time teaching staff and seconded teachers);
- b. non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, educational support staff, administrative and clerical staff and manual and premises related staff);
- c. employees' expenses;
- d. the purchase, maintenance, repair and replacement:
 - (i) of teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books, stationery and ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
 - (ii) of other supplies and services;
- e. examination fees;
- f. repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewerage; fuel and light (including fuel oil, solid and other fuel, electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- g. insurance;
- h. medical equipment and supplies;
- i. staff development (including in-service training);

- j. curriculum development;
- k. the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school meals to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with special educational needs or disabilities (taking account of the fact that separate additional money will be available for pupils with statements of special educational needs);
- l. administration; and
- m. establishment expenses and other institutional costs.

54A) Subject to clauses 54E – 54F, GAG for each Financial Year for each **Special Academy** will include:

- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained special school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and notified in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent, taking account of the number of pupils at each Academy;
- b) funding in respect of functions which would be carried out by the LA if each Academy was a maintained special school.

54B) The GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Special Academy** will also include, payable on a basis equivalent to that applied to maintained special schools:

- a) funding for matters for which it is necessary for that Academy to incur extra costs, for as long as those costs are deemed necessary by the Secretary of State; and
- b) payments in respect of further, specific grants made available to maintained special schools, where the relevant Academy meets the requisite conditions and criteria necessary for a maintained school to receive these grants, such payments to be at the discretion of the Secretary of State.

54C) The Secretary of State will determine GAG for each **Special Academy** for each Academy Funding Year. The determinations will be made taking into account relevant factors. Arrangements for this will be set out in the Annual Letter of funding or its equivalent.

54D) The Secretary of State may make provision, within his absolute discretion, for GAG to be adjusted in-year if the number of pupils attending the relevant academy at specified dates exceeds or falls below thresholds specified by letter. Arrangements for this will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding.

54E) The Secretary of State recognises that a larger GAG may be appropriate to meet additional costs during the start-up period, and may pay start-up grant, on a basis determined by him, during that period, the length of which will be stipulated in the Annual Letter of Funding¹³.

54F) The Secretary of State recognises that if he serves notice of intention to terminate a Supplemental Agreement, the intake of new pupils during the notice period is likely to decline and that in such circumstances payments based on a number of places related to the number of pupils attending the relevant **Special Academy** are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs during the notice period. The Secretary of State may undertake to pay a reasonable and appropriately larger GAG with respect to that Academy in the notice period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 54A-54D, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

54G) The Secretary of State also recognises that if this Agreement or a Supplemental Agreement is terminated for any reason by either party the number of pupils at the relevant **Special Academy or Special Academies** is likely to decline. In these circumstances both parties undertake to attempt to resolve issues arising from such termination in good faith and with the aim of protecting the interests and the education of the pupils at the Academy.

54H) Not used.

¹³ Note that a larger GAG for the Start-Up Period is only applicable to Academies with approved Academy Action Plans.

54I) Clauses 54J to 54P apply in respect of **Alternative Provision Academies** only.

54J) GAG will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company as a contribution¹⁴ to the normal running costs of the **Alternative Provision Academy**. These will include, but are not limited to:

- a) teachers' salaries and related costs (including full and part time teaching staff and seconded teachers);
- b) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, educational support staff, administrative and clerical staff and manual and premises related staff);
- c) employees' expenses;
- d) the purchase, maintenance, repair and replacement:
 - (i) of teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books, stationery and ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
 - (ii) of other supplies and services;
- e) examination fees;
- f) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewerage; fuel and light (including fuel oil, solid and other fuel, electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- g) insurance;
- h) medical equipment and supplies;

¹⁴ The extent of any such contribution to be within the absolute discretion of the Secretary of State.

- i) staff development (including in-service training);
- j) curriculum development;
- k) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school meals to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with special educational needs or disabilities (taking account of the fact that separate additional money will be available for pupils with statements of special educational needs);
- l) administration; and
- m) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.

54K) Subject to clause 54M, GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Alternative Provision Academy** will include:

- a) funding determined by the Secretary of State and notified in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent, taking account of the number of pupils and/or places at the Alternative Provision Academy;
- b) funding in respect of functions which would be carried out by the local authority if the Alternative Provision Academy were a maintained school.
- c) funding for matters for which it is necessary for the Alternative Provision Academy to incur extra costs, for as long as those costs are deemed necessary by the Secretary of State; and
- d) payments in respect of further, specific grants made available to Pupil Referral Units maintained by the local authority, where the Alternative Provision Academy meets the requisite conditions and criteria necessary for a Pupil Referral Unit maintained by the local authority to receive these grants.

54L) For each **Alternative Provision Academy**, the Secretary of State will determine GAG for each Academy Financial Year. The determination will be made taking into account relevant factors. Arrangements for this will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent.

54M) For each **Alternative Provision Academy**, the Secretary of State may make provision, within his absolute discretion, for GAG to be adjusted in-year if the number of pupils attending the relevant Alternative Provision Academy at specified dates exceeds or falls below thresholds specified by letter. Arrangements for this will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent.

54N) The Secretary of State recognises that if he serves notice of intention to terminate this Agreement, the intake of new pupils during the notice period is likely to decline and that in such circumstances the total income of the relevant **Alternative Provision Academy** is unlikely to be sufficient. In such circumstances payments based simply upon the number of pupils attending that Academy are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs during the notice period. The Secretary of State may undertake to pay a reasonable and appropriately larger GAG with respect to the Alternative Provision Academy in the notice period than would be justified solely taking into account factors at clause 54J in order to enable the Alternative Provision Academy to operate effectively.

54O) The Secretary of State also recognises that if this Agreement is terminated for any reason by either party the number of pupils at the relevant **Alternative Provision Academy** is likely to decline. In these circumstances both parties undertake to attempt to resolve issues arising from such termination in good faith and with the aim of protecting the interests and the education of the pupils at the Alternative Provision Academy.

Earmarked Annual Grant

55) Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG") may be paid by the Secretary of State to the Company in respect of either Recurrent Expenditure or Capital Expenditure for such specific purposes as may from time to time be agreed between the Secretary of State and the Company and as described in the relevant funding letter. The Company shall only spend EAG in accordance with the scope, terms and conditions of the grant set out in the relevant funding letter.

56) Where the Company is seeking a specific EAG in relation to any Academy Financial Year, it shall submit a letter outlining its proposals and the reasons for its request to the DfE.

Arrangements for Payment of GAG and EAG

57) The Secretary of State shall notify the Company at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year of the GAG and EAG figures in respect of each Academy which, subject to Parliamentary approval, the Secretary of State plans for that Academy Financial Year and of the assumptions and figures on which these are based.

58) If GAG or EAG is calculated incorrectly due to a mistake of the Secretary of State then:

- a) if this leads to an underpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State will correct the underpayment in subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) if this leads to an overpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State reserves the right to recover any overpaid grant in subsequent Academy Financial Years, as appropriate, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Company.

59) If GAG or EAG is calculated incorrectly because the Company provides incorrect information to the Secretary of State then:

- a) if this leads to an underpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State may correct the underpayment in subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) if this leads to an overpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State reserves the right to recover any overpaid grant in subsequent Academy Financial Years, as appropriate, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Company.

60) The amounts of GAG for an Academy Financial Year will be determined annually by the Secretary of State. The amount of GAG for each Academy for the initial Academy Financial Year will be notified to the Company in a funding letter at

a date preceding that year. For subsequent years the amount of GAG will be notified to the Company in a funding letter preceding that Academy Financial Year (the "Annual Letter of Funding"). The Annual Letter of Funding will not include the amount that the Company will receive in respect of grants for which information to enable timely calculation is not available or is incomplete, such grants will be notified as soon as practicable later in the year. Amounts of EAG will be notified to the Company wherever possible in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent as soon as practicable thereafter.

61) The Secretary of State undertakes to pay GAG in monthly instalments on or before the twenty-fifth day of each month, each such instalment to fund the salaries and other payroll costs for the relevant month of all monthly paid employees and all other costs payable during the next following month. The detailed arrangements for payment will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent.

Other relevant funding

62) ¹⁵Not used.

62A) With regards to an **Alternative Provision Academy**, the Company may apply to the Secretary of State for financial assistance in relation to proposed redundancies that it may make. On an application to the Secretary of State, he may (at his absolute discretion) agree to meet a proportion of the Company's costs arising from the inclusion of Academies in the Schedules to the Redundancy Payments (Continuity of Employment in Local Government) (Modification) Order 1999. In response to an application for financial assistance, the Secretary of State may agree to meet the costs of the employees' prior eligible service, being service prior to the opening of the Alternative Provision Academy, but the Company will be required to meet the costs of service after the opening of the Academy.

¹⁵ NOTE. For **Mainstream Academies** or **Special Academies** with approved Academy Action Plans see appropriate wording to be included as set out in Section B of the Appendix below.

63) The Secretary of State may meet costs incurred by the Company in connection with the transfer of employees from any predecessor school under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Payment of grant in respect of such costs is to be agreed between the parties on a case by case basis and the Company shall not budget on the basis that it will receive any grant in respect of such costs unless it is specifically notified that such grant will be paid.

64) The Company may also receive funding from an LA in respect of the provision detailed in statements of SEN for pupils attending an Academy in accordance with the provisions of Section 483A of the Education Act 1996 and regulations made under that section. The Company shall ensure that all provision detailed in statements of SEN is provided for such pupils.

65) Not used.

FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS

General

66) The Company shall appoint an Accounting Officer and shall notify the Secretary of State of that appointment.

67) In relation to the use of grant paid to the Company by the Secretary of State, the Company shall abide by the requirements of, and have regard to the guidance in, the Academies Financial Handbook published by the DfE and amended from time to time and as modified to take account of the fact that the Company manages more than one Academy which sets out in detail provisions for the financial management of each Academy including guidance on financial systems and controls and accounting and reporting requirements, in so far as these are not inconsistent with any accounting and reporting requirements and guidance that it may be subject to by virtue of its being a charity.

67A) The Company shall abide by the requirements of the current 16 to 19 Funding Guidance published by the Secretary of State and as amended from time to time, or such other guidance on 16 to 19 funding issued by the Secretary of

State as may from time to time be applicable, in respect of any of its provision for persons who are above compulsory school age until the academic year in which they reach the age of 19.

68) The formal budget plan must be approved each Academy Financial Year by the Directors of the Company.

69) Any payment of grant by the Secretary of State in respect of each Academy is subject to his being satisfied as to the fulfilment by the Company of the following conditions:

- a) in its conduct and operation it shall apply financial and other controls which conform to the requirements both of propriety and of good financial management;
- b) arrangements have been made to maintain proper accounting records and that statements of income and expenditure and balance sheets may be produced in such form and frequency as the Secretary of State may from time to time reasonably direct;
- c) in addition to the obligation to fulfil the statutory requirements referred to in sub-clause f) below, the Company shall prepare its financial statements, Directors' report, Annual Accounts and its Annual Return for each Academy Financial Year in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as issued by the Charity Commission and updated from time to time as if the Company was a non-exempt Charity and/or in such form or manner and by such date as the Secretary of State may reasonably direct and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator each Academy Financial Year;
- d) a statement of the accounting policies used should be sent to the Secretary of State with the financial statements and should carry an audit report stating that, in the opinion of the auditors, the statements show a true and fair view of the Company's affairs and that the grants were used for the purposes intended;

- e) the Company shall ensure that its accounts are audited annually by independent auditors appointed under arrangements approved by the Secretary of State;
- f) the Company prepares and files with the Companies Registry such annual accounts as are required by the Companies Act 2006;
- g) the Company shall publish on its website its Annual Accounts, Annual Report, Memorandum, Articles, Funding Agreement and a list of the names of the Directors of the Company; and
- h) the Company insures or procures insurance by another person of its assets in accordance with normal commercial practice or under the terms of any subsisting leases in respect of the leasehold interest of the site upon which each Academy is situated.

70) In addition, and at his expense, the Secretary of State may instruct auditors to report to him on the adequacy and effectiveness of the accounting systems and internal controls maintained by the Company to standards determined by the Secretary of State and to make recommendations for improving the financial management of the Company.

71) The books of accounts and all relevant records, files and reports of the Company including those relating to financial controls, shall be open at all reasonable times to officials of the DfE and the National Audit Office and to contractors retained by the DfE or the National Audit Office for inspection or the carrying out of value for money studies; and the Company shall secure that those officials and contractors are given reasonable assistance with their enquiries. For the purposes of this clause 'relevant' means in any way relevant to the provision and use of grants provided by the Secretary of State under this Agreement.

72) The Company shall submit information in relation to the finances of each Academy to the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements of the Academies Financial Handbook as amended from time to time, or as otherwise specified from time to time by the Secretary of State.

73) At the beginning of any Academy Financial Year the Company may hold unspent GAG for any Academy from previous Academy Financial Years amounting to such percentage (if any) as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company prior to the beginning of that Academy Financial Year of the total GAG payable for the Academy in the Academy Financial Year just ended or such higher amount as may from time to time be agreed. The Company shall use such carried forward amount for such purpose, or subject to such restriction on its use, as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company.

74) Notwithstanding clause 73 any additional grant provided over and above that:

a) set out in clauses 43-49 in relation to **Mainstream Academies** and made in accordance with clauses 50-52 may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the Start-up Period or the circumstances set out in clause 52 come to an end.

b) set out in clauses 54A-54D in relation to **Special Academies** and made in accordance with clauses 54E-54F may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the Start-up Period or the circumstances set out in clause 54F come to an end.

c) set out in clauses 54K-54M in relation to **Alternative Provision Academies** and made in accordance with clauses 54N may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the circumstances set out in clause 54N come to an end.

75) Any unspent GAG not allowed to be carried forward under clauses 73-74 may be taken into account in the payment of subsequent grant.

75A) GAG paid by the Secretary of State shall only be used by the Company for the educational charitable purpose of advancing for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom, in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing by establishing, maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing

Academies offering a broad and balanced curriculum. Such funds shall not be used by the Company for any other charitable purpose without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, except where the use of such funds for that charitable purpose is merely incidental to their use for the educational charitable purpose of advancing for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom.

76) The Company may also spend or accumulate funds from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State for application to the benefit of an Academy as it sees fit. Any surplus arising from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State shall be separately identified in the Company's balance sheet.

77) The Company shall not, in relation to assets or property funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State or otherwise coming within the meaning of publicly funded land as defined by paragraph 22(3) of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed:

- a) except such as are given in normal contractual relations, give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort above a value as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company from time to time;
- b) write off any debts or liabilities owed to it, nor offer to make any ex gratia payments (such as staff severance or compensation payments), above a value as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company from time to time;
- c) except as may be permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company, make any sale or purchase of or otherwise dispose of freehold or leasehold property including entering into a contract to dispose of land or granting an option to acquire an interest in land; or

- d) take up any leasehold or tenancy agreement for a term exceeding three years.

78) The Company shall provide 30 days' prior written notice to the Secretary of State, whether or not the circumstances require the Secretary of State's consent, of its intention to:

- a) give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort;
- b) write off any debts owed to it or offer to make any ex gratia payments;
- c) make any sale or purchase of or otherwise dispose of freehold or leasehold property including entering into a contract to dispose of land or granting an option to acquire an interest in land; or
- d) take up any leasehold or tenancy agreement for a term exceeding three years.

79) Each discovered loss of an amount exceeding the amount for the time being specified by the Secretary of State and arising from suspected theft or fraud, shall be reported by the Company to the Secretary of State at the earliest opportunity.

80) It is the responsibility of the Company to ensure that each Academy balances its budget from Academy Financial Year to Academy Financial Year. For the avoidance of doubt, this does not prevent the Company from:

- a) subject to clause 73, carrying a surplus from one Academy Financial Year to the next; or
- b) carrying forward from a previous Academy Financial Year or Academy Financial Years a sufficient surplus or sufficient cumulative surpluses on grants from the Secretary of State to meet an in-year deficit on such grants in a subsequent financial year; or
- c) incurring an in-year deficit on funds from sources other than grants from the Secretary of State in any Academy Financial Year, provided it does not affect the Company's responsibility to ensure that the Company balances its overall budget from Academy Financial Year to Academy Financial Year.

80A The Company shall abide by the requirements of and have regard to the Charity Commission's guidance to charities and charity trustees and in particular the Charity Commission's guidance in Protecting Charities from Harm ('the compliance toolkit'). Any references in this document which require charity trustees to report to the Charity Commission should instead be interpreted as references to report to the Principal Regulator.

Borrowing Powers

81) Except as may be permitted by the Academies Financial Handbook (and amended from time to time) or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Company, the Company shall not borrow against or so as to put at risk property or assets funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State without specific approval of the Secretary of State, such approval may only be granted in limited circumstances. The Company shall not operate an overdraft except to cover irregularities in cash flow. Such an overdraft, and the maximum amount to be borrowed, shall require approval by the Company in General Meeting and in writing by the Secretary of State, and shall be subject to any conditions which the Secretary of State may reasonably impose.

82) The Company shall provide 30 days' written notice to the Secretary of State of its intention to borrow, whether or not such borrowing requires the Secretary of State's approval under clause 81 above.

Disposal of Assets

83) Where the Company acquires assets for a nil consideration or at an under value it shall be treated for the purpose of this Agreement as having incurred expenditure equal to the market value of those assets at the time that they were acquired. This provision shall not apply to assets transferred to the Company at nil or nominal consideration and which were previously used for the purposes of an Academy and/or were transferred from an LA, the value of which assets shall be disregarded.

84) The sale or disposal by other means, or reinvestment of proceeds from the disposal, of a capital asset by the Company shall require the consent of the

Secretary of State, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed, where:

- a) the Secretary of State paid capital grant in excess of the value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State for the asset; or
- b) the asset was transferred to the Company from an LA for no or nominal consideration.

85) Furthermore, reinvestment of a percentage of the proceeds of disposal of a capital asset paid for with a capital grant from the Secretary of State shall require the Secretary of State's consent in the circumstances set out above and reinvestment exceeding the value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State or with other special features will be subject to Parliamentary approval. The percentage of the proceeds for which consent is needed is the percentage of the initial price of the asset which was paid by capital grant from the Secretary of State.

86) This clause applies in the event, during the lifetime of this Agreement, of the disposal of a capital asset for which capital grant of any amount was paid by the Secretary of State, where the asset was acquired by the Company. In this event, the Company shall repay to the Secretary of State the same proportion of the proceeds of the disposal as equates with the proportion of the original cost met by the Secretary of State, unless the Secretary of State agrees to some or all of the proceeds being retained by the Company for its charitable purposes.

87) This clause applies in the event, during the lifetime of this Agreement, that the Secretary of State consents to the disposal of an asset which was transferred to the Company from an LA for no or nominal consideration. In this event the Secretary of State may give consent on the basis that all or part of the proceeds of the disposal should be made over to the LA from which the asset was transferred, taking into account the amount of the proceeds to be reinvested by the Company. The Secretary of State will have regard to any representations from the Company and the LA from which the asset was transferred before giving consent under this clause.

88) Except with the consent of the Secretary of State, the Company shall not dispose of assets funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State for a consideration less than the best price that can reasonably be obtained, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

89) The Company shall provide 30 days' written notice to the Secretary of State of its intention to dispose of assets for a consideration less than the best price that can reasonably be obtained, whether or not such disposal requires the Secretary of State's consent under clause 88 above.

TERMINATION

90) This Agreement shall commence on the date hereof and continue until terminated in accordance with clause 91 or until all Supplemental Agreements have terminated.

91) The Secretary of State may at any time by notice in writing terminate this Agreement and each of the Supplemental Agreements such termination to take effect on the date of the notice, on the occurrence, or where in his reasonable opinion there is a serious risk of occurrence, of any of the following events:-

- a) the Company calls a meeting of its creditors (whether formal or informal) or enters into any composition or arrangement (whether formal or informal) with its creditors; or
- b) the Company proposes a voluntary arrangement within Section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (as amended); or
- c) the Company is unable to pay its debts within the meaning of Section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986 provided that, for the purposes of this Clause, Section 123 (1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 shall have effect as if the amount of £10,000 was substituted for £750. The Company shall not be deemed unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this clause if any such demand as is mentioned in the said Section is being contested in good faith by the Company; or
- d) the Company has a receiver and manager (with the exception of Receivers and Managers or Interim Managers appointed by the Charity Commission under

the Charities Act 2011 or any subsequent re-enactment of that Act), administrator or administrative receiver appointed over all or any part of its undertakings, assets or income; or

e) any distraint, execution or other process is levied or enforced on any of the Company's property and is not paid out, withdrawn or discharged within fifteen Business Days; or

f) the Company has passed a resolution for its winding up; or

g) an order is made for the winding up or administration of the Company.

92) The Company shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as possible after receiving any petition which may result in an order for the winding up or administration of the Company and shall provide an explanation to the Secretary of State of the circumstances giving rise to the service of such a petition.

93) Not used.

Change of Control

93A) The Secretary of State may at any time, subject to clause 93C) below, terminate this Agreement by notice in writing to the Academy Trust such termination to take effect on the date of the notice in the event that there is a change:

(a) in the Control of the Company;

(b) in the Control of a legal entity that Controls the Company.

Provided that where a person ('P') is a member or director of the body corporate (as a corporation sole or otherwise) by virtue of an office, no change of Control arises merely by P's successor becoming a member or director in P's place.

93B) The Company shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of any change or proposed change of Control within the meaning of clause 93A) above, as soon as reasonably practicable after it has become aware of any such change, or

proposed change, of Control.

93C) When notifying the Secretary of State further to clause 93B), the Company may seek the Secretary of State's agreement that, if he is satisfied that the person assuming Control is suitable, he will not in those circumstances exercise his right to terminate this Agreement further to clause 93A).

94) Not used.

GENERAL

Information

95) Without prejudice to any other provision of this Agreement, the Secretary of State acting reasonably may from time to time call for information on any **Mainstream Academy or Special Academy** relating to, but not restricted to, the following matters:

- a) curriculum;
- b) arrangements for the assessment of pupils;
- c) teaching staff including numbers, qualifications, experience, salaries, and teaching loads;
- d) class sizes;
- e) outreach work with other schools and the local community;
- f) operation of the admission criteria and over subscription arrangements for the Academy including numbers of applications for places and the number and characteristics of pupils accepted for admission – for Mainstream Academies only;
- g) numbers of pupils excluded (including permanent and fixed term exclusions);
- h) levels of authorised and unauthorised absence;
- i) charging and remissions policies and the operation of those policies;

- j) organisation, operation and building management;
- k) financial controls;
- l) compliance with the requirements of the Charity Commission's guidance to charities and charity trustees and in particular the Charity Commission's guidance in the Protecting Charities from Harm ('the compliance toolkit') and in CC9: Speaking Out, Campaigning and Political Activities by Charities, as amended from time to time; and
- m) membership and proceedings of the Company and the Local Governing Body together with any other relevant information concerning the management or governance of the Academy which, subject to clause 99), is reasonably necessary for the Secretary of State to carry out his functions generally and in relation to this Agreement or the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

95A) Without prejudice to any other provision of this Agreement, the Secretary of State acting reasonably may from time to time call for information on **any Alternative Provision Academy** relating to, but not restricted to, the following matters:

- a) curriculum and the provision generally (including specifically for SEN pupils);
- b) arrangements for the assessment of pupils and any information about pupil progress, achievement and attainment;
- c) staff including numbers, qualifications, experience, salaries, and teaching loads;
- d) class sizes and pupil organisation;
- e) outreach work with other schools and the local community;
- f) operation of the referral and reintegration processes for the Alternative Provision Academy including numbers of requested referrals, the number of referrals that have been refused and the reasons for the refusal in each case and the number and characteristics of pupils accepted for admission and destinations/outcomes of pupils/former pupils;
- g) numbers of pupils excluded (including permanent and fixed term exclusions),

characteristics of pupils excluded, reasons for exclusions, outcomes of any independent review panels;

- h) levels of authorised and unauthorised absence;
- i) charging and remissions policies and the operation of those policies;
- j) organisation, operation and building management;
- k) financial controls;
- l) compliance with the requirements of the Charity Commission's guidance to charities and charity trustees and in particular the Charity Commission's guidance in the Protecting Charities from Harm ('the compliance toolkit') and in (CC9): "Speaking Out: Guidance on Campaigning and Political Activities by Charities", as amended from time to time; and
- m) membership and proceedings of the Company and Local Governing Body together with any other relevant information concerning the management or governance of the Academy which, subject to clause 99), is reasonably necessary for the Secretary of State to carry out his functions generally and in relation to this Agreement or the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

96) The Company shall make such information available to the Secretary of State, in such form and manner and at such times as may reasonably be required. The Secretary of State shall provide the Company with such information as it may reasonably require of him for the running of an Academy.

Access by the Secretary of State's Officers

97) The Company shall allow access to the premises of any Academy at any reasonable time to DfE officials. All records, files and reports relating to the running of the Company and each Academy shall be available to them at any reasonable time. The Company shall provide the Secretary of State in advance with papers relating to each Academy prepared for meetings of the Local Governing Body, of the Company's directors and of the members of the Company. Two DfE officials shall be entitled to attend and to speak at all such meetings, but shall withdraw from any discussion of an Academy's or the Company's relationship with the Secretary of State or any discussion of bids for funding to the Secretary of State. The Company shall take any steps which are required to

secure its compliance with the obligations imposed by this clause of this Agreement.

98) The Company shall ensure that:

- a) the agenda for every meeting of the relevant Local Governing Body and the Company's directors;
- b) the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the person acting as chairman of that meeting;
- c) the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
- d) any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting,

are made available for inspection by any interested party at the relevant Academy and, as soon as is reasonably practicable, sent to the Secretary of State upon request.

99) There may be excluded from any item required to be made available for inspection by any interested party and to be sent to the Secretary of State by virtue of clause 98, any material relating to:

- a) a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at any Academy;
- b) a named pupil at, or candidate for admission to, any Academy; and
- c) any matter which, by reason of its nature, the Company is satisfied should remain confidential.

Notices

100) A notice or communication given to a party under or in connection with this Agreement:

- (a) shall be in writing and in English;
- (b) shall be sent to the party for the attention of the contact and at the address listed in clause 100A;
- (c) shall be sent by a method listed in clause 100C; and
- (d) is deemed received as set out in clause 100C if prepared and sent in accordance with this clause.

100A) The parties' addresses and contacts are:

Name of Party	Position of Contact	Address
Secretary of State	Head of Academies Division	Department for Education, Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT
The Company	Chairman of Directors	Equitas Academies Trust, c/o Aston Manor Academy, Phillips Street, Aston, Birmingham, B6 4PZ

100B) A party may change its details given in the table in clause 100A) by giving notice, the change taking effect for the party notified of the change at 9.00 am on the date five Business Days after deemed receipt of the notice.

100C) Any notice or other communication required to be given to a party under or in connection with this Agreement shall be delivered by hand or sent by pre-paid first-class post or other next working day delivery service. Any notice or communication shall be deemed to have been received if delivered by hand, on signature of a delivery receipt or at the time the notice is left at the address specified in Clause 100A, or otherwise at 9.00 am on the second Business Day after posting.

100D) This clause does not apply to the service of any proceedings or other documents in any legal action. For the purposes of clause 100, "writing" shall not include e-mail.

101) The service by the Secretary of State of a notice of termination of a Supplemental Agreement shall not prejudice the ability of the Company (if it wishes to do so) during the notice period to admit pupils to the relevant Academy in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement and the relevant Supplemental Agreement and to receive GAG and EAG in respect of them.

Complaints

102) If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part prior to the opening of any **Mainstream Academy** or any **Special Academy**, as referred to in clause 2.4 for **Mainstream Academies** and clause 3.1 for **Special Academies** of the relevant supplemental agreement, and all or part of that complaint was being or had been investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III or the Local Government Act 1974 ('Part III') or that complaint in whole or in part could have been investigated under Part III had the school the Academy replaced remained a maintained school, the Company:

- a) will abide by the provisions of Part III as though the Academy were a maintained school;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State shall have the power to investigate the matter complained of as if it had taken place after conversion;
- c) agrees to act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as though that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school.

102A) If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part prior to the opening of any **Alternative Provision Academy**, as referred to in clause 3.1 of the relevant supplemental agreement, and all or part of that complaint was being or had been investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III of the Local Government Act 1974 ("Part III") or that complaint in whole or in part could have

been investigated under Part III had the Pupil Referral Unit the Alternative Provision Academy replaced remained a Pupil Referral Unit, the Company:

- a) will abide by the provisions of Part III as though the Alternative Provision Academy were a Pupil Referral Unit;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State shall have the power to investigate the matter complained of as if it had taken place after conversion;
- c) agrees to act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as though that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Alternative Provision Academy were a Pupil Referral Unit.

102B) If at the time of the opening of any **Mainstream Academy** or any **Special Academy** the investigation of a complaint made to the governing body of the school that **Mainstream Academy** or any **Special Academy** replaced (as referred to in clause 2.4 for **Mainstream Academies** and clause 3.1 for **Special Academies** of the relevant Supplemental Agreement) has not yet been completed, the Company shall continue to investigate that complaint in accordance with the complaints procedures established by that governing body.

102C) If a complaint is made to the Company about matters arising in whole or in part during the 12 months prior to the opening of any **Mainstream Academy** or any **Special Academy** (as referred to in clause 2.4 for **Mainstream Academies** and clause 3.1 for **Special Academies** of the relevant supplemental agreement) the Company agrees to investigate that complaint as if the matter complained of had taken place after the opening of that **Mainstream Academy** or any **Special Academy**.

102D) If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part during the 12 months prior to the opening of any Alternative Provision Academy, the Company agrees to investigate that complaint as if the matter complained of had taken place after the opening of that Alternative Provision Academy.

102E) With regards to a Mainstream Academy or a Special Academy, if the Secretary of State could have given an order and/or a direction under section 496 and/or section 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 2.4 for Mainstream Academies and

clause 3.1 for Special Academies of the relevant Supplemental Agreement) and that order and/or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately prior to conversion, the Company agrees:

- a) the Secretary of State may give orders and/or directions to the Company as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school;
- b) to act in accordance with any such order and/or direction from the Secretary of State.

102F) With regards to an **Alternative Provision Academy** if the Secretary of State could have given an order and/or a direction under section 496 and/or section 497 of the Education Act 1996¹⁶ to the management committee of the Pupil Referral Unit the Alternative Provision Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 3.1 of the relevant Supplemental Agreement) and that order and/or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately prior to conversion, the Company agrees:

- a) the Secretary of State may give orders and/or directions to the Company as though the Alternative Provision Academy were a Pupil Referral Unit and sections 496 and 497 applied to the management committee of that Pupil Referral Unit;
- b) to act in accordance with any such order and/or direction from the Secretary of State.

General

103) This Agreement shall not be assignable by the Company.

103A) No delay, neglect or forbearance on the part of the Secretary of State in enforcing (in whole or in part) any provision of this Agreement or in exercising (in whole or in part) any right or remedy conferred on him by this Agreement shall be or be deemed to be a waiver of such provision or right or remedy or a waiver of any other provision or right or remedy or shall in any way prejudice any right or

¹⁶ Section 496/7 of the Education Act 1996 applies to Pupil Referral Units by virtue of the Education (PRU)(Application of Enactments)(England) Regulations 2007

remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement or shall amount to an election not to enforce such provision or exercise such right or remedy (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any right to terminate this Agreement). No single or partial exercise of such right or remedy shall preclude or restrict the further exercise of that or any other right or remedy.

104) The Secretary of State and the Company recognise the difficulties in catering in this Agreement and the Supplemental Agreements for all the circumstances which may arise in relation to the Academies and undertake in good faith to conduct such consultations as may from time to time be desirable in order to promote the interests of the Academies throughout the currency of this Agreement.

105) Termination of this agreement, for any reason, shall not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.

106) This deed may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute the one agreement.

107) This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales.

108) The parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out of or in connection with this agreement or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

Annex A

New Articles of Association

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

EFFECTIVE DATE

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006

A COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE

ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

OF

EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

COMPANY NUMBER: 7662289

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE
ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION
OF
EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST

INTERPRETATION

1. In these Articles:-

- a. "the Academies" means all the schools and educational institutions referred to in Articles 4a) and established by the Company (and "Academy" shall mean any one of those schools or educational institutions)
- b. "Academy Financial Year" means the academic year from 1st of September to 31st of August of the following year;
- c. "Advisory Body" means a committee appointed by the Trustees pursuant to Articles 100-104 established either of representatives of one or more of the Academies or of advisors who will provide strategic support and capacity to advise the Trustees on the functioning of the Academies which may be established as or in addition to any Local Governing Body;
- d. "the Articles" means these Articles of Association of the Company;
- e. "Chief Inspector" means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;
- f. "clear days" in relation to the period of a notice means the period excluding the day when the notice is given or deemed to be given and the day on which it is given or on which it is to take effect;

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

- g. "Clerk" means the clerk to the Trustees or any other person appointed to perform the duties of the clerk to the Trustees, including a joint, assistant or deputy clerk;
- h. "the Company" means save as otherwise defined at Article 6.9 the company intended to be regulated by these Articles and referred to in Article 2;
- i. "the Trustees" means save as otherwise defined at Article 6.9 the Trustees of the Company (and "Trustee" means any one of those Trustees);
- j. "Executive Headteacher" means such person as may be appointed by the Trustees to act on their behalf and with executive powers who may be the Executive Headteacher and/or registered head teacher of one or more of the Academies;
- k. "financial expert" means an individual, company or firm who is authorised to give investment advice under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;
- l. "the LAs" means all the local authorities covering the areas in which the Academies are situated (and "the LA" shall mean any one of these local authorities);
- m. "Local Authority Associated Persons" means any person associated with any local authority within the meaning given in section 69 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989;
- n. "Local Governing Bodies" means the committees appointed pursuant to Articles 100-101 and 104 (and "Local Governing Body" means any one of these committees);
- o. "Member" means a member of the Company and someone who as such is bound by the undertaking contained in Article 8;
- p. "the Memorandum" means the Memorandum of Association of the Company;
- q. "Office" means the registered office of the Company;

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

- r. "Parent Trustees" means the Trustees if elected or appointed pursuant to Articles 53 – 56 inclusive;
- s. "Headteacher" means the head teachers or heads of school of the Academies including any executive head teacher (and "Headteacher" means any one of these head teachers or heads of school);
- t. "Principal Regulator" means the body or person appointed as the Principal Regulator under the Charities Act 2011;
- u. "Relevant Funding Agreements" means the agreement or agreements entered into by the Company and the Secretary of State under section 1 of the Academies Act 2010 for the establishment of each Academy, including any variation or supplemental agreements thereof;
- v. "the seal" means the common seal of the Company if it has one;
- w. "Secretary of State" means the Secretary of State for Education or successor;
- x. "Staff Trustee" means an employee of the Company who may be appointed as a Trustee pursuant to Article 50A;
- y. "teacher" means a person employed under a contract of employment or a contract for services or otherwise engaged to provide his services as a teacher at one or more Academies;
- z. "UCB" means the University College Birmingham, a higher education corporation and an exempt charity whose registered office is at Summer Row, Birmingham B3 1JB;
- aa. "UCB Trustee" means a Trustee appointed by UCB pursuant to Article 50C;
- bb. "the United Kingdom" means Great Britain and Northern Ireland;
- cc. words importing the masculine gender only shall include the feminine gender. Words importing the singular number shall

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

include the plural number, and vice versa;

- dd. subject as aforesaid, words or expressions contained in these Articles shall, unless the context requires otherwise, bear the same meaning as in the Companies Act 2006, as appropriate;
 - ee. any reference to a statute or statutory provision shall include any statute or statutory provision which replaces or supersedes such statute or statutory provision including any modification or amendment thereto.
2. The Company's name is Equitas Academies Trust (and in this document it is called "**the Company**").
3. The Company's registered office is to be situated in England and Wales.

OBJECT

4. The Company's object ("**the Object**") is specifically restricted to the following:
- (a) to advance for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom, in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing by establishing, maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing schools ("**the Mainstream Academies**") offering a broad and balanced curriculum or educational institutions which are principally concerned with providing full-time or part-time education for children of compulsory school age who, by reason of illness, exclusion from school or otherwise, may not for any period receive suitable education unless alternative provision is made for them ("**the Alternative Provision Academies**") or 16 to 19 Academies offering a curriculum appropriate to the

needs of its students (**"the 16 to 19 Academies"**) or schools specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with Special Educational Needs (**"the Special Academies"**) and;

(b) to promote for the benefit of the inhabitants of the areas served by the Academies the provision of facilities for recreation or other leisure time occupation of individuals who have need of such facilities by reason of their youth, age, infirmity or disablement, financial hardship or social and economic circumstances or for the public at large in the interests of social welfare and with the object of improving the condition of life of the said inhabitants.

5. In furtherance of the Object but not further or otherwise the Company may exercise the following powers:-

- (a) to draw, make, accept, endorse, discount, execute and issue promissory notes, bills, cheques and other instruments, and to operate bank accounts in the name of the Company;
- (b) to raise funds and to invite and receive contributions provided that in raising funds the Company shall not undertake any substantial permanent trading activities and shall conform to any relevant statutory regulations;
- (c) to acquire, alter, improve and (subject to such consents as may be required by law) to charge or otherwise dispose of property;
- (d) subject to Article 6 below to employ such staff, as are necessary for the proper pursuit of the Object and to make all reasonable and necessary provision for the payments of pensions and superannuation to staff and their dependants;

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

- (e) to establish or support, whether financially or otherwise, any charitable companies, trusts, associations or institutions formed for all or any of the Object;
- (f) to co-operate with other charities, other independent and maintained schools, schools maintained by a local authority, 16-19 Academies, alternative provision Academies, institutions within the further education sector, voluntary bodies and statutory authorities operating in furtherance of the Object and to exchange information and advice with them;
- (g) to pay out of funds of the Company the costs, charges and expenses of and incidental to the formation and registration of the Company;
- (h) to establish, maintain, carry on, manage and develop the Academies at locations to be determined by the Trustees and in so doing shall have regard to the respective ethos and mission statement of each Academy;
- (i) to offer scholarships, exhibitions, prizes and awards to pupils and students former pupils and former students, and otherwise to encourage and assist pupils and students and former pupils and former students;
- (j) to provide educational facilities and services to students of all ages and the wider community for the public benefit;
- (k) to carry out research into the development and application of new techniques in education and to their approach to curriculum development and delivery and to publish the results of such research, and to develop means of benefiting from application of the experience of industry, commerce, other schools, educational institutions and the voluntary sector to the education of pupils and students in academies;

- (l) subject to such consents as may be required by law and/or by any contract entered into by or on behalf of the Company, to borrow and raise money for the furtherance of the Object in such manner and on such security as the Company may think fit;
- (m) to deposit or invest any funds of the Company not immediately required for the furtherance of its object (but to invest only after obtaining such advice from a financial expert as the Trustees consider necessary and having regard to the suitability of investments and the need for diversification);
- (n) to delegate the management of investments to a financial expert, but only on terms that:
 - (i) the investment policy is set down in writing for the financial expert by the Trustees;
 - (ii) every transaction is reported promptly to the Trustees;
 - (iii) the performance of the investments is reviewed regularly with the Trustees;
 - (iv) the Trustees are entitled to cancel the delegation arrangement at any time;
 - (v) the investment policy and the delegation arrangement are reviewed at least once a year;
 - (vi) all payments due to the financial expert are on a scale or at a level which is agreed in advance and are notified promptly to the Trustees on receipt; and
 - (vii) the financial expert must not do anything outside the powers of the Trustees;
- (o) to arrange for investments or other property of the Company to be held in the name of a nominee company acting under the control of the Trustees or of a financial expert acting under their instructions, and to pay any reasonable fee required;

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

- (p) to provide indemnity insurance to Trustees and members of any Local Governing Body (in so far as necessary) in accordance with, and subject to the conditions of section 232 to 235 of the Companies Act 2006, section 189 of the Charities Act 2011 or any other provision of law applicable to charitable companies and any such indemnity is limited accordingly;
- (q) not used;
- (r) to establish subsidiary companies to carry on any trade or business for the purpose of raising funds for the Company;
- (s) to do all such other lawful things as are necessary for or are incidental to or conducive to the achievement of the Objects.

6.1 The income and property of the Company shall be applied solely towards the promotion of the Object.

6.2 None of the income or property of the Company may be paid or transferred directly or indirectly by way of dividend bonus or otherwise by way of profit to any member of the Company. Nonetheless a member of the Company who is not also a Trustee may:

- a) benefit as a beneficiary of the Company;
- b) be paid reasonable and proper remuneration for any goods or services supplied to the Company;
- c) be paid rent for premises let by the member of the Company if the amount of the rent and other terms of the letting are reasonable and proper; and
- d) be paid interest on money lent to the Company at a reasonable and proper rate, such rate not to exceed 2 per cent per annum below the base lending rate of a UK clearing bank selected by the Trustees, or 0.5%, whichever is the higher.

6.3 A Trustee may benefit from any indemnity insurance purchased at the Company's expense to cover the liability of the Trustees which by virtue of any rule of law would otherwise attach to them in respect of any negligence, default or breach of trust or breach of duty of which they may be guilty in relation to the Company: Provided that any such insurance shall not extend to: (i) any claim arising from any act or omission which Trustees knew to be a breach of trust or breach of duty or which was committed by the Trustees in reckless disregard to whether it was a breach of trust or breach of duty or not; and (ii) the costs of any unsuccessful defence to a criminal prosecution brought against the Trustees in their capacity as directors or trustees of the Company. Further, this Article does not authorise a Trustee to benefit from any indemnity insurance that would be rendered void by any provision of the Companies Act 2006, the Charities Act 2011 or any other provision of law.

6.4 A company, which has shares listed on a recognised stock exchange and of which any one Trustee holds no more than 1% of the issued capital of that company, may receive fees, remuneration or other benefit in money or money's worth from the Company.

6.5 A Trustee may at the discretion of the Trustees be reimbursed from the property of the Company for reasonable expenses properly incurred by him or her when acting on behalf of the Company, but excluding expenses in connection with foreign travel.

6.6 No Trustee may:

- (a) buy any goods or services from the Company;
- (b) sell goods, services, or any interest in land to the Company;
- (c) be employed by, or receive any remuneration from the Company (other than the Executive Headteacher or any Staff Trustee whose employment and/or remuneration is subject to the procedure and conditions in Article 6.8);
- (d) receive any other financial benefit from the Company;

unless:

- (i) the payment is permitted by Article 6.7 and the Trustees follow

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

the procedure and observe the conditions set out in Article 6.8;
or

- (ii) the Trustees obtain the prior written approval of the Charity Commission and fully comply with any procedures it prescribes.

6.7 Subject to Article 6.8, a Trustee may:

- a) receive a benefit from the Company in the capacity of a beneficiary of the Company.
- b) be employed by the Company or enter into a contract for the supply of goods or services to the Company, other than for acting as a Trustee.
- c) receive interest on money lent to the Company at a reasonable and proper rate not exceeding 2% per annum below the base rate of a clearing bank to be selected by the Trustees, or 0.5%, whichever is the higher.
- d) receive rent for premises let by the Trustee to the Company if the amount of the rent and the other terms of the lease are reasonable and proper.

6.8 The Company and its Trustees may only rely upon the authority provided by Article 6.7 if each of the following conditions is satisfied:

- (a) the remuneration or other sums paid to the Trustee do not exceed an amount that is reasonable in all the circumstances.
- (b) the Trustee is absent from the part of any meeting at which there is discussion of:
 - i) his or her employment, remuneration, or any matter concerning the contract, payment or benefit; or
 - ii) his or her performance in the employment, or his or her performance of the contract (unless present solely in his or her capacity as an employee); or

- iii) any proposal to enter into any other contract or arrangement with him or her or to confer any benefit upon him or her that would be permitted under Article 6.7; or
 - (iv) any other matter relating to a payment or the conferring of any benefit permitted by Article 6.7.
- (c) the Trustee does not vote on any such matter and is not to be counted when calculating whether a quorum of Trustees is present at the meeting.
- (d) save in relation to employing or contracting with the Executive Headteacher or any Staff Trustee, the other Trustees are satisfied that it is in the interests of the Company to employ or to contract with that Trustee rather than with someone who is not a Trustee. In reaching that decision the Trustees must balance the advantage of employing a Trustee against the disadvantages of doing so (especially the loss of the Trustee's services as a result of dealing with the Trustee's conflict of interest).
- (e) the reason for their decision is recorded by the Trustees in the minute book.
- (f) a majority of the Trustees then in office have received no such payments or benefit.

6.8A The provision in Article 6.6 (c) that no Trustee may be employed by or receive any remuneration from the Company (other than a Staff Trustee and the Executive Headteacher) does not apply to an employee of the Company who is subsequently elected or appointed as a Trustee save that this Article shall only allow such a Trustee to receive remuneration or benefit from the Company in his capacity as an employee of the Company and provided that the procedure as set out in Articles 6.8(b)(i), (ii) and 6.8 (c) is followed.

6.9 In Articles 6.2-6.9:

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

(a) "company" shall include any company in which the Company:

- holds more than 50% of the shares; or
- controls more than 50% of the voting rights attached to the shares; or
- has the right to appoint one or more Trustees to the Board of the Company.

(b) "Trustee" shall include any child, stepchild, parent, grandchild, grandparent, brother, sister or spouse of the Trustee or any person living with the Trustee as his or her partner.

(c) the employment or remuneration of a Trustee includes the engagement or remuneration of any firm or company in which the Trustee is:

- (i) a partner;
- (ii) an employee;
- (iii) a consultant;
- (iv) a Trustee;
- (v) a member; or
- (vi) a shareholder, unless the shares of the company are listed on a recognised stock exchange and the Trustee holds less than 1% of the issued capital.

7. The liability of the members of the Company is limited.

8. Every member of the Company undertakes to contribute such amount as may be required (not exceeding £10) to the Company's assets if it should be wound up while he or she is a member or within one year after he or she ceases to be a member, for payment of the Company's debts and liabilities before he or she ceases to be a member, and of the costs, charges and expenses of winding up, and for the adjustment of the rights of the contributories among themselves.

9. If the Company is wound up or dissolved and after all its debts and liabilities (including any under section 2 of the Academies Act 2010) have been satisfied there remains any property it shall not be paid to or distributed among the members of the Company (except to a member that is itself a charity), but shall be given or transferred to some other charity or charities having objects similar to the Object which prohibits the distribution of its or their income and property to an extent at least as great as is imposed on the Company by Article 6 above, chosen by the members of the Company at or before the time of dissolution and if that cannot be done then to some other charitable object.

10. Not used.

11. No alteration or addition shall be made to or in the provisions of the Articles which would have the effect (a) that the Company would cease to be a company to which section 60 of the Companies Act 2006 applies; or (b) that the Company would cease to be a charity.

MEMBERS

12. The Members of the Company shall comprise

- a. the signatories to the Memorandum who shall be the first Members;
- b. University College Birmingham;
- c. the chairman of the Trustees;
- d. the vice chairman of the Trustees; and
- e. any person appointed under Article 16;

13. Each of the persons entitled to appoint Members in Article 12 shall have the right from time to time by written notice delivered to the Office to remove any Member appointed by them and to appoint a replacement Member to fill a vacancy whether resulting from such removal or otherwise.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

14. If any of the persons entitled to appoint Members in Article 12:

- a) in the case of an individual, die or become legally incapacitated;
- b) in the case of a corporate entity, cease to exist and are not replaced by a successor institution; or
- c) becomes insolvent or makes any arrangement or composition with their creditors generally;

their right to appoint Members under these Articles shall vest in the remaining Members.

15. Membership will terminate automatically if:

- a) a Member (which is a corporate entity) ceases to exist and is not replaced by a successor institution;
- b) a Member (which is an individual) dies or becomes incapable by reason of illness or injury of managing and administering his or her own affairs; or
- c) a Member becomes insolvent or makes any arrangement or composition with that Member's creditors generally; or
- d) a Member who was a Member by virtue of his post ceases to hold the relevant post provided that if automatic termination in this instance would result in the number of Members being less than three, the Member shall remain a Member until a further Member is appointed (which the remaining two Members shall be free to make without the approval of the retiring Member notwithstanding the provisions of Article 16) at which time the membership of the retiring Member shall terminate.

15A. The Members may agree unanimously in writing to remove any Member(s) who is a signatory to the Memorandum (save that the agreement

of a signatory to the Memorandum who is to be removed shall not be required), provided that it is in the interests of the Company to remove such a Member(s).

16. The Members may agree by passing a special resolution in writing to appoint such additional Members as they think fit and may agree by passing a special resolution in writing to remove any such additional Members provided that such appointment or removal is in the interests of the Company.

17. Every person nominated to be a Member of the Company shall either sign a written consent to become a Member or sign the register of Members on becoming a Member.

18. Any Member may resign provided that after such resignation the number of Members is not less than three. A Member shall cease to be one immediately on the receipt by the Company of a notice in writing signed by the person or persons entitled to remove him under Articles 13 or 16 provided that no such notice shall take effect when the number of Members is less than three unless it contains or is accompanied by the appointment of a replacement Member.

GENERAL MEETINGS

19. Not used.

20. The Trustees may call general meetings and, on the requisition of Members pursuant to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, shall forthwith proceed to convene a general meeting in accordance with that Act. If there are not within the United Kingdom sufficient Trustees to call a general meeting, any Trustee or any Member of the Company may call a general meeting.

NOTICE OF GENERAL MEETINGS

21. General meetings shall be called by at least fourteen clear days' notice

but a general meeting may be called by shorter notice if it is so agreed by a majority in number of Members having a right to attend and vote and together representing not less than 90% of the total voting rights at that meeting.

The notice shall specify the time and place of the meeting and the general nature of the business to be transacted and, in the case of an Annual General Meeting, shall specify the meeting as such. The notice shall also state that the Member is entitled to appoint a proxy.

The notice shall be given to all the Members, to the Trustees and auditors.

22. The accidental omission to give notice of a meeting to, or the non-receipt of notice of a meeting by, any person entitled to receive notice shall not invalidate the proceedings at that meeting.

PROCEEDINGS AT GENERAL MEETINGS

23. No business shall be transacted at any meeting unless a quorum is present. A Member counts towards the quorum by being present either in person or by proxy. Two persons entitled to vote upon the business to be transacted, each being a Member or a proxy of a Member or a duly authorised representative of a Member organisation shall constitute a quorum.

24. If a quorum is not present within half an hour from the time appointed for the meeting, or if during a meeting a quorum ceases to be present, the meeting shall stand adjourned to the same day in the next week at the same time and place or to such time and place as the Trustees may determine.

25. The chairman, if any, of the Trustees or in his absence some other Trustee nominated by the Trustees shall preside as chairman of the meeting, but if neither the chairman nor such other Trustee (if any) be present within fifteen minutes after the time appointed for holding the meeting and willing to act, the Trustees present shall elect one of their number to be chairman and, if there is only one Trustee present and willing to act, he shall be the chairman.

26. If no Trustee is willing to act as chairman, or if no Trustee is present within fifteen minutes after the time appointed for holding the meeting, the Members present and entitled to vote shall choose one of their number to be chairman.

27. A Trustee shall, notwithstanding that he is not a Member, be entitled to attend and speak at any general meeting.

28. The chairman may, with the consent of a majority of the Members at a meeting at which a quorum is present (and shall if so directed by the meeting), adjourn the meeting from time to time and from place to place, but no business shall be transacted at any adjourned meeting other than the business which might properly have been transacted at the meeting had the adjournment not taken place. When a meeting is adjourned for fourteen days or more, at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time and place of the adjourned meeting and the general nature of the business to be transacted. Otherwise it shall not be necessary to give any such notice.

29. A resolution put to the vote of the meeting shall be decided on a show of hands unless before, or on the declaration of the result of the show of hands, a poll is duly demanded. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, a poll may be demanded:-

- (a) by the chairman; or
- (b) by at least two Members having the right to vote at the meeting; or,
- (c) by a Member or Members representing not less than one-tenth of the total voting rights of all the Members having the right to vote at the meeting.

30. Unless a poll is duly demanded a declaration by the chairman that a resolution has been carried or carried unanimously, or by a particular majority, or lost, or not carried by a particular majority and an entry to that effect in the minutes of the meeting shall be conclusive evidence of the fact without proof of the number or proportion of the votes recorded in favour of or against such

resolution.

31. The demand for a poll may be withdrawn, before the poll is taken, but only with the consent of the chairman. The withdrawal of a demand for a poll shall not invalidate the result of a show of hands declared before the demand for the poll was made.

32. A poll shall be taken as the chairman directs and he may appoint scrutineers (who need not be Members) and fix a time, date and place for declaring the results. The result of the poll shall be deemed to be the resolution of the meeting at which the poll was demanded.

33. A poll demanded on the election of the chairman or on a question of adjournment shall be taken immediately. A poll demanded on any other question shall be taken either immediately or at such time, date and place as the chairman directs not being more than thirty days after the poll is demanded. The demand for a poll shall not prevent continuance of a meeting for the transaction of any business other than the question on which the poll is demanded. If a poll is demanded before the declaration of the result of a show of hands and the demand is duly withdrawn, the meeting shall continue as if the demand had not been made.

34. No notice need be given of a poll not taken immediately if the time and place at which it is to be taken are announced at the meeting at which it is demanded. In other cases at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time and place at which the poll is to be taken.

35. A resolution in writing agreed by such number of members as required if it had been proposed at a general meeting shall be as effectual as if it had been passed at a general meeting duly convened and held provided that a copy of the proposed resolution has been sent to every Member. The resolution may consist of several instruments in the like form each agreed by one or more Members.

VOTES OF MEMBERS

36. On the show of hands every Member present in person shall have one vote. On a poll every Member present in person or by proxy shall have one vote.

37. Not used.

38. No Member shall be entitled to vote at any general meeting unless all moneys then payable by him to the Company have been paid.

39. No objections shall be raised to the qualification of any person to vote at any general meeting except at the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote objected to is tendered, and every vote not disallowed at the meeting shall be valid. Any objection made in due time shall be referred to the chairman whose decision shall be final and conclusive.

40. An instrument appointing a proxy shall be in writing, signed by or on behalf of the appointer and shall be in the following form (or in a form as near thereto as circumstances allow or in any other form which is usual or which the Trustees may approve) -

“I/We,, of, being a Member/Members of the above named Company, hereby appoint of, or in his absence, of as my/our proxy to attend, speak and vote in my/our name[s] and on my/our behalf at the annual general meeting/ general meeting of the Company to be held on20[], and at any adjournment thereof.

Signed on 20[]”

41. Where it is desired to afford Members an opportunity of instructing the proxy how he shall act the instrument appointing a proxy shall be in the following form (or in a form as near thereto as circumstances allow or in any other form which is usual or which the Trustees may approve) -

“I/We,, of, being a Member/Members of the above named Company, hereby appoint of, or in his absence,

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

..... of, as my/our proxy to attend, speak and vote in my/our name[s] and on my/our behalf at the annual general meeting/ general meeting of the Company, to be held on 20[], and at any adjournment thereof.

This form is to be used in respect of the resolutions mentioned below as follows:

Resolution No. 1 *for * against

Resolution No. 2 *for * against.

- Strike out whichever is not desired.

Unless otherwise instructed, the proxy may vote as he thinks fit or abstain from voting.

Signed on 20[]”

42. The instrument appointing a proxy and any authority under which it is signed or a copy of such authority certified by a notary or in some other way approved by the Trustees may -

- (a) be deposited at the office or at such other place within the United Kingdom as is specified in the notice convening the meeting or in any instrument of proxy sent out by the Company in relation to the meeting not less than 48 hours before the time for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the person named in the instrument proposes to vote, or
- (b) in the case of a poll taken more than 48 hours after it is demanded, be deposited as aforesaid after the poll has been demanded and not less than 24 hours before the time appointed for the taking of the poll;
- (c) where the poll is not taken forthwith but is taken not more than 48 hours after it was demanded, be delivered at the meeting at which the poll was demanded to the chairman or to the Clerk or to any Trustee;

and an instrument of proxy which is not deposited or delivered in a manner so permitted shall be invalid.

43. A vote given or poll demanded by proxy or by the duly authorised representative of a corporation shall be valid notwithstanding the previous determination of the authority of the person voting or demanding a poll unless notice of the determination was received by the Company at the office or at such other place at which the instrument of proxy was duly deposited before the commencement of the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote given or the poll demanded or (or in the case of a poll taken otherwise than on the same day as the meeting or adjourned meeting) the time appointed for taking the poll.

44. Any organisation which is a Member of the Company may by resolution of its board of Trustees or other governing body authorise such person as it thinks fit to act as its representative at any meeting of the Company, and the person so authorised shall be entitled to exercise the same powers on behalf of the organisation which he represents as that organisation could exercise if it were an individual Member of the Company.

TRUSTEES

45. The number of Trustees shall be not less than three but (unless otherwise determined by ordinary resolution) shall not be subject to any maximum.

46. Subject to Articles 48-49, the Company shall have the following Trustees:

- a. any Trustees, appointed under Article 50;
- b. any Staff Trustees, appointed under Articles 50A;
- c. the Executive Headteacher;
- d. a UCB Trustee, appointed under Article 50C;
- e. Parent Trustees, if appointed under Articles 53-56D.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

47. The Company may also have any Co-opted Trustee appointed under Article 58.

48. The first Trustees shall be those persons named in the statement delivered pursuant to sections 9 and 12 of the Companies Act 2006.

49. Future Trustees shall be appointed or elected, as the case may be, under these Articles. Where it is not possible for such a Trustee to be appointed or elected due to the fact that an Academy has not yet been established, then the relevant Article or part thereof shall not apply.

APPOINTMENT OF TRUSTEES

50. The Trustees may appoint such number of Trustees as they see fit.

50A. The Trustees may appoint Staff Trustees and/or Headteachers to be Trustees through such process as they may determine.

50B. The total number of Trustees including the Executive Headteacher who are employees of the Company shall not exceed one third of the total number of Trustees.

50C. UCB shall appoint the UCB Trustee.

51. Not used.

52. Not used.

PARENT TRUSTEES

53. There shall be a minimum of two Parent Trustees unless there are Local Governing Bodies which include at least two Parent Members.

54. Except for 16 – 19 Academies, Parent Trustees and Parent members of the Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies shall be elected or appointed (in accordance with the terms of reference determined by the Trustees from time to time). The elected or appointed Parent Trustees or Parent members of the Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies must be a parent of a

registered pupil at one or more of the Academies (but not one of the 16 – 19 Academies) at the time when he is elected or appointed.

54A. The number of Parent Trustees and Parent members of the Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies required shall be made up by Parent Trustees and Parent members appointed by the Trustees if the number of parents standing for election is less than the number of vacancies.

55. The Trustees shall make all necessary arrangements for, and determine all other matters relating to, an election of the Parent Trustees or Parent members of Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies, including any question of whether a person is a parent of a registered pupil at one of the Academies (but not one of the 16 – 19 Academies). Any election of the Parent Trustees or Parent members of Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.

56. In appointing a Parent Trustee or Parent member of a Local Governing Body or Advisory Body the Trustees shall appoint a person who is the parent of a registered pupil at an Academy (but not one of the 16-19 Academies); or where it is not reasonably practical to do so, a person who is the parent of a child of compulsory school age.

56A. In the case of 16-19 Academies, Parent Trustees and Parent members of the Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies shall either be elected by parents of registered students at the 16 to 19 Academies, pursuant to Articles 56B to 56C, or be appointed by the Trustees, pursuant to Article 56D. The elected or appointed Parent Trustees or Parent members of the Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies must be a parent of a student at one of the 16 to 19 Academies at the time when he is either elected or appointed.

56B. The number of Parent Trustees and Parent members of the Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies required shall be made up by Parent Trustees and Parent members appointed by the Trustees if the number of parents standing for election is less than the number of vacancies.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

56C. The Trustees shall make all necessary arrangements for, and determine all other matters relating to, an election of the Parent Trustees or Parent members of Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies, including any question of whether a person is a parent of a registered student at one of the 16-19 Academies. Any election of the Parent Trustees or Parent members of Local Governing Bodies or Advisory Bodies which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.

56D. In appointing a Parent Trustee or Parent member of a Local Governing Body or Advisory Body, the Trustees shall appoint a person who is the parent of a registered student at one of the 16 to 19 Academies; or where it is not reasonably practical to do so, a person who is the parent of a child above compulsory school age but not above the age of 19.

EXECUTIVE HEADTEACHER

57. The Executive Headteacher shall be a Trustee for as long as he or she remains in office as such.

CO-OPTED TRUSTEES

58. The Trustees may appoint Co-opted Trustees. A 'Co-opted Trustee' means a person who is appointed to be a Trustee by being Co-opted by Trustees who have not themselves been so appointed. The Trustees may not co-opt an employee of the Company as a Co-opted Trustee if thereby the number of Trustees who are employees of the Company would exceed one third of the total number of Trustees including the Executive Headteacher.

59 – 63. Not used.

TERM OF OFFICE

64. The term of office for any Trustee shall be four years save that this time limit shall not apply to the Executive Headteacher and any Staff Trustee serving in an executive capacity, who shall serve ex officio and for as long as he or she remains in office as such. Subject to remaining eligible to be a

particular type of Trustee, any Trustee may be re-appointed or re-elected.

RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL

65. A Trustee shall cease to hold office if he resigns his office by notice to the Company (but only if at least three Trustees will remain in office when the notice of resignation is to take effect).

66. A Trustee shall cease to hold office if he is removed by the person or persons who appointed him. This Article does not apply in respect of a Parent Trustee.

67. Where a Trustee resigns his office or is removed from office, the Trustee or, where he is removed from office, those removing him, shall give written notice thereof to the Clerk.

DISQUALIFICATION OF TRUSTEES

68. No person shall be qualified to be a Trustee unless he is aged 18 or over at the date of his election or appointment. No current pupil or current student of any of the Academies shall be a Trustee.

69. A Trustee shall cease to hold office if he becomes incapable by reason of illness or injury of managing or administering his own affairs.

70. A Trustee shall cease to hold office if he is absent without the permission of the Trustees from all their meetings held within a period of six months and the Trustees resolve that his office be vacated.

71. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Trustee if -

- (a) his estate has been sequestrated and the sequestration has not been discharged, annulled or reduced; or
- (b) he is the subject of a bankruptcy restrictions order or an interim order.

72. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Trustee at any time when he is subject to a disqualification order or a disqualification undertaking under the Company Trustees Disqualification Act 1986 or to an order made under section 429(2)(b) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (failure to pay under county court administration order).

73. A Trustee shall cease to hold office if he ceases to be a Trustee by virtue of any provision in the Companies Act 2006 or is disqualified from acting as a trustee by virtue of section 178 of the Charities Act 2011 (or any statutory re-enactment or modification of that provision).

74. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Trustee if he has been removed from the office of charity trustee or trustee for a charity by an order made by the Charity Commission or the High Court on the grounds of any misconduct or mismanagement in the administration of the charity for which he was responsible or to which he was privy, or which he by his conduct contributed to or facilitated.

75. Not used.

76. Not used.

77. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Trustee where he has, at any time, been convicted of any criminal offence, excluding any that have been spent under the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 as amended, and excluding any offence for which the maximum sentence is a fine or a lesser sentence except where a person has been convicted of any offence which falls under section 178 of the Charities Act 2011.

78. After the first Academy has opened, a person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Trustee if he has not provided to the chairman of the Trustees a criminal records certificate at an enhanced disclosure level under section 113B of the Police Act 1997. In the event that the certificate discloses any information which would in the opinion of either

the chairman or the Executive Headteacher confirm their unsuitability to work with children that person shall be disqualified. If a dispute arises as to whether a person shall be disqualified, a referral shall be made to the Secretary of State to determine the matter. The determination of the Secretary of State shall be final.

79. Where, by virtue of these Articles a person becomes disqualified from holding, or continuing to hold office as a Trustee; and he is, or is proposed, to become such a Trustee, he shall upon becoming so disqualified give written notice of that fact to the Clerk.

80. Articles 68 to 74, Articles 77 to 79 and Articles 97 to 98 also apply to any member of any committee of the Trustees, including a Local Governing Body, who is not a Trustee.

CLERK TO THE TRUSTEES

81. The Clerk shall be appointed by the Trustees for such term, at such remuneration and upon such conditions as they may think fit; and any Clerk so appointed may be removed by them. The Clerk shall not be a Trustee, or a Headteacher. Notwithstanding this Article, the Trustees may, where the Clerk fails to attend a meeting of theirs, appoint any one of their number or any other person to act as Clerk for the purposes of that meeting.

CHAIRMAN AND VICE-CHAIRMAN OF THE TRUSTEES

82. The Trustees shall each school year elect a chairman and a vice-chairman from among their number. A Trustee who is employed by the Company shall not be eligible for election as chairman or vice-chairman.

83. Subject to Article 84, the chairman or vice-chairman shall hold office as such until his successor has been elected in accordance with Article 85.

84. The chairman or vice-chairman may at any time resign his office by giving notice in writing to the Clerk. The chairman or vice-chairman shall cease to

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

hold office if -

- (a) he ceases to be a Trustee;
- (b) he is employed by the Company;
- (c) he is removed from office in accordance with these Articles; or
- (d) in the case of the vice-chairman, he is elected in accordance with these Articles to fill a vacancy in the office of chairman.

85. Where by reason of any of the matters referred to in Article 84, a vacancy arises in the office of chairman or vice-chairman, the Trustees shall at their next meeting elect one of their number to fill that vacancy.

86. Where the chairman is absent from any meeting or there is at the time a vacancy in the office of the chairman, the vice-chairman shall act as the chair for the purposes of the meeting.

87-89. Not used.

90. The Trustees may remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office in accordance with these Articles.

91. A resolution to remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office which is passed at a meeting of the Trustees shall not have effect unless -

- i) it is confirmed by a resolution passed at a second meeting of the Trustees held not less than fourteen days after the first meeting; and
- ii) the matter of the chairman's or vice-chairman's removal from office is specified as an item of business on the agenda for each of those meetings.

92. Before the Trustees resolve at the relevant meeting on whether to confirm the resolution to remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office, the Trustee or Trustees proposing his removal shall at that meeting state their

reasons for doing so and the chairman or vice-chairman shall be given an opportunity to make a statement in response.

POWERS OF TRUSTEES

93. Subject to provisions of the Companies Act 2006, the Articles and to any directions given by special resolution, the business of the Company shall be managed by the Trustees who may exercise all the powers of the Company. No alteration of the Articles and no such direction shall invalidate any prior act of the Trustees which would have been valid if that alteration had not been made or that direction had not been given. The powers given by this Article shall not be limited by any special power given to the Trustees by the Articles and a meeting of Trustees at which a quorum is present may exercise all the powers exercisable by the Trustees.

94. In addition to all powers hereby expressly conferred upon them and without detracting from the generality of their powers under the Articles the Trustees shall have the following powers, namely:

(a) to expend the funds of the Company in such manner as they shall consider most beneficial for the achievement of the Object and to invest in the name of the Company such part of the funds as they may see fit and to direct the sale or transposition of any such investments and to expend the proceeds of any such sale in furtherance of the Object;

(b) to enter into contracts on behalf of the Company.

95. In the exercise of their powers and functions, the Trustees may consider any advice given by UCB, any Advisory Body, the Executive Headteacher and any other executive officer.

96. Any bank account in which any money of the Company is deposited shall be operated by the Trustees in the name of the Company. All cheques BACS and orders for the payment of money from such an account shall be signed or authorised by at least two signatories authorised by the Trustees.

CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

97. Any Trustee who has or can have any direct or indirect duty or personal interest (including but not limited to any Personal Financial Interest) which conflicts or may conflict with his duties as a Trustee shall disclose that fact to the Trustees as soon as he becomes aware of it. A Trustee must absent himself from any discussions of the Trustees in which it is possible that a conflict will arise between his duty to act solely in the interests of the Company and any duty or personal interest (including but not limited to any Personal Financial Interest).

98. For the purpose of Article 97, a Trustee has a Personal Financial Interest in the employment or remuneration of, or the provision of any other benefit to, that Trustee as permitted by and as defined by Articles 6.5-6.9.

THE MINUTES

99. The minutes of the proceedings of a meeting of the Trustees shall be drawn up and entered into a book kept for the purpose by the person acting as Clerk for the purposes of the meeting; and shall be signed (subject to the approval of the Trustees) at the same or next subsequent meeting by the person acting as chairman thereof.

COMMITTEES

100. Subject to these Articles, the Trustees:

- a) may appoint separate committees to be known as Local Governing Bodies for each Academy and the Trustees shall be free to appoint one committee for several Academies if they so wish; and
- b) may establish any other committee.

101. Subject to these Articles, the constitution, membership and proceedings of any committee shall be determined by the Trustees. The establishment,

terms of reference, constitution and membership of any committee of the Trustees shall be reviewed at least once in every twelve months. The membership of any committee of the Trustees may include persons who are not Trustees, provided that (with the exception of the Local Governing Bodies if established) a majority of members of any such committee shall be Trustees. Except in the case of a Local Governing Body, no vote on any matter shall be taken at a meeting of a committee of the Trustees unless the majority of members of the committee present are Trustees.

102. Not used.

103. Not used.

104. The functions and proceedings of any Local Governing Bodies shall be subject to regulations made by the Trustees from time to time.

DELEGATION

105. The Trustees may delegate to any Trustee, committee (including any Local Governing Body or Advisory Body), the Executive Headteacher or any other holder of an executive office, such of their powers or functions as they consider desirable to be exercised by them. Any such delegation shall be made subject to any conditions the Trustees may impose, and may be revoked or altered.

106. Where any power or function of the Trustees has been exercised by any committee (including any Local Governing Body or Advisory Body), any Trustee, the Executive Headteacher or any other holder of an executive office, that person or committee shall report to the Trustees in respect of any action taken or decision made with respect to the exercise of that power or function at the meeting of the Trustees immediately following the taking of the action or the making of the decision.

EXECUTIVE HEADTEACHER AND HEADTEACHERS

107. The Trustees shall appoint the Executive Headteacher and the

Headteachers of the Academies. The Trustees may delegate such powers and functions as they consider are required by the Executive Headteacher and the Headteachers for the internal organisation, management and control of the Academies (including the implementation of all policies approved by the Trustees and for the direction of the teaching and curriculum at the Academies).

MEETINGS OF THE TRUSTEES

108. Subject to these Articles, the Trustees may regulate their proceedings as they think fit.

109. The Trustees shall hold at least three meetings in every school year. Meetings of the Trustees shall be convened by the Clerk. In exercising his functions under this Article the Clerk shall comply with any direction -

- a. given by the Trustees; or
- b. given by the chairman of the Trustees or, in his absence or where there is a vacancy in the office of chairman, the vice-chairman of the Trustees, so far as such direction is not inconsistent with any direction given as mentioned in (a).

110. Any three Trustees may, by notice in writing given to the Clerk, requisition a meeting of the Trustees; and it shall be the duty of the Clerk to convene such a meeting as soon as is reasonably practicable.

111. Each Trustee shall be given at least seven clear days before the date of a meeting –

- i) notice in writing thereof, signed by the Clerk, and sent to each Trustee at the address provided by each Trustee from time to time; and
- ii) a copy of the agenda for the meeting;

provided that where the chairman or, in his absence or where there is a

vacancy in the office of chairman, the vice-chairman, so determines on the ground that there are matters demanding urgent consideration, it shall be sufficient if the written notice of a meeting, and the copy of the agenda thereof are given within such shorter period as he directs.

112. The convening of a meeting and the proceedings conducted thereat shall not be invalidated by reason of any individual not having received written notice of the meeting or a copy of the agenda thereof.

113. A resolution to rescind or vary a resolution carried at a previous meeting of the Trustees shall not be proposed at a meeting of the Trustees unless the consideration of the rescission or variation of the previous resolution is a specific item of business on the agenda for that meeting.

114. A meeting of the Trustees shall be terminated forthwith if -

- (a) the Trustees so resolve; or
- (b) the number of Trustees present ceases to constitute a quorum for a meeting of the Trustees in accordance with Article 117, subject to Article 119 .

115. Where in accordance with Article 114 a meeting is not held or is terminated before all the matters specified as items of business on the agenda for the meeting have been disposed of, a further meeting shall be convened by the Clerk as soon as is reasonably practicable, but in any event within seven days of the date on which the meeting was originally to be held or was so terminated.

116. Where the Trustees resolve in accordance with Article 114 to adjourn a meeting before all the items of business on the agenda have been disposed of, the Trustees shall before doing so determine the time and date at which a further meeting is to be held for the purposes of completing the consideration of those items, and they shall direct the Clerk to convene a meeting accordingly.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

117. Subject to Article 119 the quorum for a meeting of the Trustees, and any vote on any matter thereat, shall be any three Trustees, or, where greater, any one third (rounded up to a whole number) of the total number of Trustees holding office at the date of the meeting.

118. The Trustees may act notwithstanding any vacancies in their number, but, if the numbers of Trustees is less than the number fixed as the quorum, the continuing Trustees may act only for the purpose of filling vacancies or of calling a general meeting.

119. The quorum for the purposes of -

- (a) appointing a Parent Trustee under Articles 56;
- (b) any vote on the removal of a Trustee in accordance with Article 66;
- (c) any vote on the removal of the chairman of the Trustees in accordance with Article 90;

shall be any two-thirds (rounded up to a whole number) of the persons who are at the time Trustees entitled to vote on those respective matters.

120. Subject to these Articles, every question to be decided at a meeting of the Trustees shall be determined by a majority of the votes of the Trustees present and voting on the question. Every Trustee shall have one vote.

121. Subject to Articles 117-119, where there is an equal division of votes, the chairman of the meeting shall have a casting vote in addition to any other vote he may have.

122. The proceedings of the Trustees shall not be invalidated by

- a. any vacancy among their number; or
- b. any defect in the election, appointment or nomination of any Trustee.

123. A resolution in writing, signed by all the Trustees entitled to receive

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

notice of a meeting of Trustees or of a committee of Trustees, shall be valid and effective as if it had been passed at a meeting of Trustees or (as the case may be) a committee of Trustees duly convened and held. Such a resolution may consist of several documents in the same form, each signed by one or more of the Trustees.

124. Subject to Article 125, the Trustees shall ensure that a copy of

- a. the agenda for every meeting of the Trustees;
- b. the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the person acting as chairman of that meeting;
- c. the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
- d. any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting,

are, as soon as is reasonably practicable, made available at every Academy to persons wishing to inspect them.

125. There may be excluded from any item required to be made available in pursuance of Article 124, any material relating to -

- a. a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at any Academy;
- b. a named pupil or named student at, or candidate for admission to, any Academy; and
- c. any matter which, by reason of its nature, the Trustees are satisfied should remain confidential.

126. Any Trustee shall be able to participate in meetings of the Trustees by telephone or video conference provided that:

- a. he has given notice of his intention to do so detailing the telephone number on which he can be reached and/or appropriate

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream Special 16-19 Alternative Provision

details of the video conference suite from which he shall be taking part at the time of the meeting at least 48 hours before the meeting; and,

b. the Trustees have access to the appropriate equipment if after all reasonable efforts it does not prove possible for the person to participate by telephone or video conference the meeting may still proceed with its business provided it is otherwise quorate.

PATRONS AND HONORARY OFFICERS

127. The Trustees may from time to time appoint any person whether or not a Member of the Company to be a patron of the Company or to hold any honorary office and may determine for what period he is to hold such office.

THE SEAL

128. The seal, if any, shall only be used by the authority of the Trustees or of a committee of Trustees authorised by the Trustees. The Trustees may determine who shall sign any instrument to which the seal is affixed and unless otherwise so determined it shall be signed by a Trustee and by the Clerk or by a second Trustee.

ACCOUNTS

129. Accounts shall be prepared in accordance with the relevant Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt charity and Parts 15 and 16 of the Companies Act 2006 and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

ANNUAL REPORT

130. The Trustees shall prepare its Annual Report in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt charity and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

ANNUAL RETURN

131. The Trustees shall comply with their obligations under Part 24 of the Companies Act 2006 (or any statutory re-enactment or modification of that Act) with regard to the preparation of an annual return to the Registrar of Companies and in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Company was a non-exempt charity and to the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

NOTICES

132. Any notice to be given to or by any person pursuant to the Articles (other than a notice calling a meeting of the Trustees) shall be in writing or shall be given using electronic communications to an address for the time being notified for that purpose to the person giving the notice. In these Articles, "Address" in relation to electronic communications, includes a number or address used for the purposes of such communications.

133. A notice may be given by the Company to a Member either personally or by sending it by post in a prepaid envelope addressed to the Member at his registered address or by leaving it at that address or by giving it using electronic communications to an address for the time being notified to the Company by the Member. A Member whose registered address is not within the United Kingdom and who gives to the Company an address within the United Kingdom at which notices may be given to him, or an address to which notices may be sent using electronic communications, shall be entitled to have notices given to him at that address, but otherwise no such Member shall be entitled to receive any notice from the Company.

134. A Member present, either in person or by proxy, at any meeting of the Company shall be deemed to have received notice of the meeting and, where necessary, of the purposes for which it was called.

135. Proof that an envelope containing a notice was properly addressed, prepaid and posted shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given.

Proof that a notice contained in an electronic communication was sent in accordance with guidance issued by the Institute of Chartered Secretaries and Administrators shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given. A notice shall be deemed to be given at the expiration of 48 hours after the envelope containing it was posted or, in the case of a notice contained in an electronic communication, at the expiration of 48 hours after the time it was sent.

INDEMNITY

136. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006 and Article 6.3 every Trustee or other officer or auditor of the Company and every member of any Local Governing Body and/or Advisory Body (in so far as necessary) shall be indemnified out of the assets of the Company against any liability incurred by him in that capacity in defending any proceedings, whether civil or criminal, in which judgment is given in favour or in which he is acquitted or in connection with any application in which relief is granted to him by the court from liability for negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the affairs of the Company.

RULES

137. The Trustees may from time to time make such rules or bye laws as they may deem necessary or expedient or convenient for the proper conduct and management of the Company and for purposes of prescribing classes of and conditions of membership, and in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, they may by such rules or bye laws regulate:

- a. the admission and classification of Members of the Company (including the admission of organisations to membership) and the rights and privileges of such Members, and the conditions of membership and the terms on which Members may resign or have their membership terminated and the entrance fees, subscriptions and other fees or payments to be made by Members;

- b. the conduct of Members of the Company in relation to one another, and to the Company's servants;
- c. the setting aside of the whole or any part or parts of the Company's premises at any particular time or times or for any particular purpose or purposes;
- d. the procedure at general meetings and meetings of the Trustees and committees of the Trustees and meetings of the Local Governing Bodies in so far as such procedure is not regulated by the Articles; and,
- e. generally, all such matters as are commonly the subject matter of Company rules.

138. The Company in general meeting shall have power to alter, add or to repeal the rules or bye laws and the Trustees shall adopt such means as they think sufficient to bring to the notice of Members of the Company all such rules or bye laws, which shall be binding on all Members of the Company. Provided that no rule or bye law shall be inconsistent with, or shall affect or repeal anything contained in the Articles.

AVOIDING INFLUENCED COMPANY STATUS

139. Notwithstanding the number of Members from time to time, the maximum aggregate number of votes exercisable by Local Authority Associated Persons shall never exceed 19.9% of the total number of votes exercisable by Members in general meeting and the votes of the other Members having a right to vote at the meeting will be increased on a pro-rata basis.

140. No person who is a Local Authority Associated Person may be appointed as a Trustee if, once the appointment had taken effect, the number of Trustees who are Local Authority Associated Persons would represent 20% or more of the total number of Trustees. Upon any resolution put to the Trustees, the maximum aggregate number of votes exercisable by any

Trustees who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall represent a maximum of 19.9% of the total number of votes cast by the Trustees on such a resolution and the votes of the other Trustees having a right to vote at the meeting will be increased on a pro-rata basis.

141. No person who is a Local Authority Associated Person is eligible to be appointed to the office of Trustee unless his appointment to such office is authorised by the local authority to which he is associated.

142. If at the time of either his becoming a Member of the Company or his first appointment to office as a Trustee any Member or Trustee was not a Local Authority Associated Person but later becomes so during his membership or tenure as a Trustee he shall be deemed to have immediately resigned his membership and/or resigned from his office as a Trustee as the case may be.

143. If at any time the number of Trustees or Members who are also Local Authority Associated Persons would (but for Articles 139 to 142 inclusive) represent 20% or more of the total number of Trustees or Members (as the case may be) then a sufficient number of the Trustees or Members (as the case may be) who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall be deemed to have resigned as Trustees or Members (as the case may be) immediately before the occurrence of such an event to ensure that at all times the number of such Trustees or Members (as the case may be) is never equal to or greater than 20% of the total number of Trustees or Members (as the case may be). Trustees or Members (as the case may be) who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall be deemed to have resigned in order of their appointment date the most recently appointed resigning first.

144. The Members will each notify the Company and each other if at any time they believe that the Company or any of its subsidiaries has become subject to the influence of a local authority (as described in section 69 of the Local Government and Housing Act) 1989.

Annex B

Arrangements for pupils with Special Educational Needs ('SEN') and disabilities at Mainstream Academies

Duties in relation to pupils with SEN¹

1. The Directors of the Company must, in respect of each **Mainstream Academy**, comply with all of the duties imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained schools in;
 - Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 as amended from time to time²;
 - The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 as amended from time to time;
 - The Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2008 as amended from time to time³.
2. Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement, the Secretary of State may (whether following a complaint made to him or otherwise) direct the Company to comply with an obligation described in this Annex where the Company has failed to comply with any such obligation.
3. Where a child who has SEN is being educated in a **Mainstream Academy**, those concerned with making special educational provision for the child must secure that the child engages in the activities of the school together with children who do not have SEN, so far as is reasonably practicable and is compatible with:
 - (a) the child receiving the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for,
 - (b) the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated, and
 - (c) the efficient use of resources.
4. In addition to complying with the duties imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained schools set out in The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 (as amended from time to time) the Company must ensure that the website for each Academy includes details of the implementation of its policy for pupils with special educational needs; the arrangements for the admission of disabled pupils; the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being

¹ Duties in relation to pupils with SEN at Special Academies are at clause 12A of the Master Funding Agreement.

² Currently these duties are in sections 313 (Duty to have regard to the Special Educational Needs Code of Practice 2001); 317 (Duties in relation to pupils with special educational needs), 317A (Duty to advise parents that special educational provision is being made); and 324(5)(b) (Duty to admit the child where a school is named in the statement).

³ These Regulations are amended by The Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2009 (SI 2009 No 1387).

Multi Academy Model

treated less favourably than other pupils; and the facilities provided to assist access to the Academy by disabled pupils (disabled pupils meaning pupils who are disabled for the purposes of the Equality Act

2010¹).

Admissions²

5. The Company must ensure that for each **Mainstream Academy** pupils with SEN are admitted on an equal basis with others in accordance with the Academy's admissions policy.
6. Where a local authority ("LA") proposes to name a **Mainstream Academy** in a statement of SEN made in accordance with section 324 of the Education Act 1996, it must give the Company written notice that it so proposes. Within 15 days of receipt of the LA's notice that it proposes to name the Academy in a statement, the Company must consent to being named, except where admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for other children; and where no reasonable steps may be made to secure compatibility. In deciding whether a child's inclusion would be incompatible with the efficient education of other children, the Company must have regard to the relevant guidance issued by the Secretary of State to maintained schools.
7. If the Company determines that admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education, it must, within 15 days of receipt of the LA's notice, notify the LA in writing that it does not agree that the Academy should be named in the pupil's statement. Such notice must set out all the facts and matters the Company relies upon in support of its contention that: (a) admitting the child would be incompatible with efficiently educating other children; and (b) the Company cannot take reasonable steps to secure this compatibility.
8. After service by the Company on the LA of any notice (further to paragraph 7 above) stating that it does not agree with the LA's proposal that the Academy be named, the Company must seek to establish from the LA, as soon as is reasonably practicable, whether or not the LA agrees with the Company. If the LA notifies the Company that it does not agree with the Company's response, and names the Academy in the child's statement, then the Company must admit the child to the school on the date specified in the statement or on the date specified by the LA.
9. Where the Company consider that the Academy should not have been named in a child's statement, they may ask the Secretary of State to determine that the LA has acted unreasonably in naming the Academy and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider.

¹ For the meaning of 'disabled', see section 6 of the Equality Act 2010.

² SEN Admissions requirements for special academies are set out in the Special Academy Supplemental Funding Agreement Annex 1.

Multi Academy Model

10. The Secretary of State's determination shall, subject only to any right of appeal which any parent or guardian of the child may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability), be final.
11. If a parent or guardian of a child in respect of whom a statement is maintained by the local authority appeals to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) either against the naming of an Academy in the child's SEN statement or asking the Tribunal to name an Academy, then the decision of the Tribunal on any such appeal shall be binding and shall, if different from that of the Secretary of State under paragraph 9 above, be substituted for the Secretary of State's decision.
12. Where the Company, the Secretary of State or the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) have determined that it should be named, the Company shall admit the child to the Academy notwithstanding any provision of Annex 1 of the Supplemental Agreement of that Academy.

Schedule 5

Amended Aston Manor Academy SFA
made pursuant to this
Deed of Variation dated 2014

SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT made

4 September 2012

BETWEEN

(1) **THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION**; and

(2) **EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST**

IS SUPPLEMENTAL TO THE MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT made between the same parties and dated 4 September 2012 (the “**Master Agreement**”).

1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement shall have the same meanings in this Agreement as were ascribed to them in the Master Agreement.

1.2 The following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:

“the Academy” means Aston Manor Academy established at Phillips Street, Aston, Birmingham, B6 4PZ.

“Chief Inspector” means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;

“Insured Risks” means fire, lightning, explosion, earthquake, storm, tempest, flood, subsidence, landslide, heave impact, terrorism, bursting or overflowing of water tanks and pipes, damage by aircraft and other aerial devices, or articles dropped there from, riot and civil commotion, labour disturbance, and malicious damage and such other risks as the Company insures against from time to time subject in all cases to any

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

exclusions or limitations as may from time to time be imposed by the insurers or underwriters.

“the Land” means the publicly funded land (including for the avoidance of doubt all buildings, structures landscaping and other erections) situated at and known as Aston Manor Academy, Phillips Street, Aston, Birmingham, B6 4PZ and registered under title number WM961064.

1.3 Reference in this Agreement to clauses and Annexes shall, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes of this Agreement.

2 THE ACADEMY

2.1 The Company will establish and maintain, and carry on or provide for the carrying on of the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement¹.

2.2 The curriculum provided by the Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced.

2.3 The requirements for the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out at Annex 1.

ACADEMY OPENING DATE

2.4 The Academy opened on 1st July 2011 replacing Aston Manor School which ceased to be maintained by the Local Authority on that date, which date shall be the conversion date within the meaning of the Academies Act 2010.

¹ Where the Academy is to be a “selective school” within the meaning of section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010, please see alternative wording for this clause in Section C. of the Appendix of Alternative and Additional Clauses. ”.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

2.5 The planned capacity of the Academy is 950 in the age range 11-19, including a sixth form of 200 places.

3 CAPITAL GRANT

3.1 Pursuant to clause 38 of the Master Funding Agreement, the Secretary of State may, in his absolute discretion provide Capital Expenditure funding in accordance with any arrangements he considers appropriate.

4 GAG AND EAG

4.1 The Secretary of State agrees to pay GAG and EAG to the Company in relation to the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement.

4A NOT USED

5 TERMINATION

5.1 Either party may give not less than seven Academy Financial Years' written notice to terminate this Agreement, such notice to expire on 31 August 2019 or any subsequent anniversary of that date.

Termination Warning Notice

5.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to issue to the Company a written notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement ("Termination Warning Notice") where he considers that:

- a) the Academy is no longer meeting the requirements referred to in clause 12 of the Master Agreement (subject to clause 5.9 of this Agreement);
- b) the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement are no longer being met;
- c) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low;
- d) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed;

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

- e) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened (whether by breakdown of discipline or otherwise); or
- f) the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement.

5.3 A Termination Warning Notice issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with clause 5.2 shall specify:

- a) reasons for the Secretary of State's issue of the Termination Warning Notice;
- b) the remedial measures which the Secretary of State requires the Company to carry out, with associated deadlines, in order to rectify the defaults identified ("Specified Remedial Measures"); and
- c) the date by which the Company must respond to the Termination Warning Notice providing its representations with regard thereto or confirm that it accepts and agrees to undertake the Specified Remedial Measures.

5.4 The Secretary of State shall consider any response and representations from the Company which are received by the date specified in accordance with clause 5.3(c) and shall confirm whether he considers that:

- a) in the light of the Company's representations in response to the Termination Warning Notice, some or all of the Specified Remedial Measures are not required to be implemented (and if so which) and/or the Specified Remedial Measures are being or will be implemented within the specified timeframe; or
- b) subject to any further measures he reasonably requires ("Further Remedial Measures") being implemented by a specified date or any evidence he requires being provided, the implementation of such measures has been or will be successfully completed within the specified timeframes; or

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

c) he is not satisfied that the Company will rectify the defaults identified in the Termination Warning Notice within the specified timeframes. (In such circumstances, the Secretary of State may notify the Company of his intention to terminate the Agreement on a specified date.)

5.5 The Secretary of State may by notice in writing terminate this Agreement with effect from a specified date in the event that:

a) the Company has not, by the date specified in clause 5.3(c), responded to the Termination Warning Notice either confirming that it accepts and agrees to undertake the Specified Remedial Measures or providing its representations with regard to the Specified Remedial Measures; or

b) the Company has not carried out the Specified Remedial Measures and/or Further Remedial Measures within the specified timeframes;

provided that having considered any representations made by the Academy Trust pursuant to clause 5.3(c), the Secretary of State remains satisfied that it is appropriate to terminate the Agreement.

Notice of Intention to Terminate

5.6 The Secretary of State may at any time give written notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement where the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Company in accordance with section 13(3) of the Education Act 2005 stating that in the Chief Inspector's opinion –

(a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy; or

(b) the Academy requires significant improvement.

5.7 Any notice issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with clause 5.6 shall invite the Company to respond with any representations within a specified timeframe.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

5.8 Where the Secretary of State has given notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement in accordance with clauses 5.6 and 5.7 and –

- (a) he has not received any representations from the Company within the timeframe specified in clause 5.7; or
- (b) having considered the representations made by the Company pursuant to clause 5.7, the Secretary of State remains satisfied that it is appropriate to terminate this Agreement

he may by notice in writing terminate this Agreement with effect from a specified date.

Termination with Immediate Effect

5.9 If the Secretary of State has cause to serve a notice on the Company under section 165 of the Education Act 2002 and a determination (from which all rights of appeal have been exhausted) has been made that the Academy shall be struck off the Register of Independent Schools, he may terminate this Agreement by notice in writing to the Company such termination to take effect on the date of the notice.

Notice of Intention to Terminate by Company

5.10 The Secretary of State shall, at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide to the Company an indication of the level of funding to be provided by the Secretary of State to the Company by way of GAG and EAG in the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Indicative Funding**”). If the Company is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Indicative Funding for the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Critical Year**”) and of the taking into account all other resources available and likely to be available to the Academy, including such funds as are set out in clause 73 of the Master Agreement and such other funds as are and likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

Company (“**All Other Resources**”), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding, to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Company may give notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement at the end of the then current Academy Financial Year.

5.11 Any notice given by the Company under clause 5.10 shall be in writing and shall be served on the Secretary of State not later than 28 February preceding the Critical Year or, if the Secretary of State shall not have given notice of the Indicative Funding to the Company on or before the date specified in clause 5.10 above, within six weeks after the Secretary of State shall have done so. The notice must specify:

5.11.1. the grounds upon which the Company’s opinion is based and include the evidence of those grounds and any professional accounting advice the Company has received and including a detailed statement of steps which the Company proposes to take with a view to ensuring that as soon as reasonably practicable the costs of running the Academy are reduced sufficiently to ensure that such costs are less than the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and

5.11.2. the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Company to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and

5.11.3. a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the “**Projected Budget**”).

5.12 Both parties undertake to use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and undertake to use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.

5.13 If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or such other date as may be agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources would cause the Company to become insolvent, then that question shall be referred to an independent expert (the “**Expert**”) for resolution. The Expert’s determination shall be final and binding on both parties. The Expert shall be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the “**Shortfall**”). The Expert shall be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert shall be appointed by the President for the time being of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.

5.14 The Expert shall be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist shall be appointed by the Chairman for the time being of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust. The educational specialist’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.

5.15 If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State shall not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Company shall be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August prior to the Critical Year. Any such notice shall be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert’s determination

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

shall have been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State shall have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

6 EFFECT OF TERMINATION

6.1 In the event of termination of this Agreement however occurring, the school shall cease to be an Academy within the meaning of Sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.

6.2 Subject to clauses 6.3 and 6.4, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement pursuant to clause 5.1 of this Agreement, the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Company. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than pursuant to clause 5.1 of this Agreement, the Secretary of State may in his absolute discretion indemnify or (to such extent if any as he may in his absolute discretion consider appropriate) compensate the Company.

6.3 The amount of any such indemnity or compensation shall be determined by the Secretary of State having regard to any representations made to him by the Company, and shall be paid at such times and in such manner as the Secretary of State may reasonably think fit.

6.4 The categories of expenditure incurred by the Company in consequence of the termination of the Agreement in respect of which the Secretary of State shall (where the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement pursuant to clause 5.1) indemnify the Company and may (where the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than pursuant to clause 5.1) in his absolute discretion indemnify or compensate the Company include (but not by way of limitation), staff compensation and redundancy payments, compensation payments in respect of broken contracts, expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes, legal and other professional fees, and dissolution expenses.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

6.5 Subject to clause 6.6, on the termination of this Agreement however occurring, the Company shall in respect of any of its capital assets at the date of termination:

(a) promptly transfer a proportion of the assets to a person nominated by the Secretary of State, if the Secretary of State considers that all or some of those assets need to be used for any educational purposes by that nominee. The proportion of the assets to be transferred shall be the same as the proportion of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or at a later date; or

(b) if the Secretary of State confirms that a transfer under clause 6.5(a) is not required, promptly repay to the Secretary of State a sum equivalent to the percentage of the value of the assets at the date of termination, or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of subsequent disposal of those assets. Such percentage to be the same as the percentage of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later.

6.6 The Secretary of State may waive in whole or in part the repayment due under clause 6.5(b) if:

- a) the Company obtains his permission to invest the proceeds of sale for its charitable objects; or
- b) the Secretary of State directs all or part of the repayment to be paid to the LA.

6.7 The sale or disposal by other means of publicly funded land held for the purposes of an Academy is now governed by Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

LAND

Restrictions on Land transfer

6A Recognising that they are or will be receiving publicly funded land at nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent) the Company:

a) shall, within 28 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry for a restriction in the proprietorship register (under section 43(1)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002 in Form RX1 as prescribed by Rule 91 and Schedule 4 of the Land Registration Rules 2003) in the following terms:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT

b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,

c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,

d) in the event that it has not registered the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a), hereby consents to the entering of the restriction referred to in 6A(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (under s. 43(1)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),

e) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a restriction

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

entered in accordance with clause 6A(a) or 6A(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Company.

Repair and Upkeep

6B) The Company shall keep the Land clean and tidy and make good any damage it causes to the Land and / or any deterioration to the condition of the Land that may arise from the date of this Agreement.

Insurance

6C) The Company shall:-

- a) keep the Land insured with a reputable insurance office against loss or damage by the Insured Risks in the sum the Company is advised represents the reinstatement value of the Land from time to time;
- b) pay the premiums for insurance promptly as they become due and maintain in force the policies of insurance on the Land;
- c) following the incidence of damage to or destruction of the Land and subject to receipt of all necessary consents licences permissions and the like apply the proceeds of the policy of the insurance received for those purposes in rebuilding and reinstating the Land (provided that this clause should be satisfied if the Company provides premises not necessarily identical to the Land as the same existing prior to such damage or destruction occurring) as soon as may be reasonably practicable;
- d) produce to the Secretary of State a copy of the insurance policy whenever reasonably requested and the receipt for the last or other evidence of renewal and up to date details of the amount of cover (but no more often than once in any period of 12 months in both cases);
- e) not knowingly do anything whereby any policy of insurance relating to the Land may become void or voidable.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

- f) insure against liability in respect of property owners' and third party risks including occupiers liability.

Transfer of Land on Termination of Agreement

6D) In recognition by the Company that they are or will be taking a transfer of publicly-funded land for nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent), the Company hereby grants and the Secretary of State hereby accepts an option, exercisable by the Secretary of State or his nominee, to transfer the said land pursuant to Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010. The option hereby granted shall be exercisable (by notice in writing by or on behalf of the Secretary of State) on the termination of this Funding Agreement for whatever cause. On the exercise of this option, the Law Society's Standard Conditions of Sale for Commercial Property in force at the date of such exercise shall apply to the transaction and completion shall take place 28 days after such exercise.

6E) In further recognition by the Company that they are or will be taking a transfer of publicly-funded land for nil consideration, (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent), to protect the option granted under clause 6D, the Company:

- a) shall, within 14 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry in Form AN1 as prescribed by Rule 81 of the Land Registration Rules 2003 for a notice to be entered in the register (under section 34(3)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002) to protect the option granted under clause 6D and including a copy of this Agreement as evidence of that option,
- b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the notice referred to in clause 6E(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the notice referred to in clause 6E(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,

d) in the event that it has not registered the notice referred to in clause 6E(a), hereby consents to the entering of the notice referred to in 6E(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (by application in Form UN1 under s. 34(3)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),

e) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a notice entered in accordance with clause 6E(a) or 6E(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Company,

f) in the case of previously unregistered land, for the further protection of the option granted in Clause 6D the Company shall within 14 days of the signing of this Agreement make application to register a Class C (iv) land charge in the Land Charges Registry and a Caution against First Registration in the Land Registry and shall provide the Secretary of State with copies of the entries secured thereby within 7 days of completing each registration, respectively. If the Secretary of State is of the view that the Company has failed to perform the registration obligations in this sub-clause he shall be at liberty to make his own applications to secure these registrations.

7 ANNEX

7.1 The Annex to this Agreement forms part of and is incorporated into this Agreement.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

8 THE MASTER AGREEMENT

8.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement the Master Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

9 GENERAL

9.1 This Agreement shall not be assignable by the Company.

9.2 No delay, neglect or forbearance on the part of the Secretary of State in enforcing (in whole or in part) any provision of this Agreement or in exercising (in whole or in part) any right or remedy conferred on him by this Agreement shall be or be deemed to be a waiver of such provision or right or remedy or a waiver of any other provision or right or remedy or shall in any way prejudice any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement or shall amount to an election not to enforce such provision or exercise such right or remedy (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any right to terminate this Agreement). No single or partial exercise of such right or remedy shall preclude or restrict the further exercise of that or any other right or remedy.

9.3 Termination of this agreement, for any reason, shall not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.

9.4 This deed may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute the one agreement.

9.5 This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales.

9.6 The parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

of or in connection with this agreement or its subject matter or formation
(including non-contractual disputes or claims).

Annex 1

REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ADMISSION OF PUPILS TO ASTON MANOR ACADEMY

GENERAL

1. This annex may be amended in writing at any time by agreement between the Secretary of State and the Company.
2. Except as provided in paragraphs 2A to 2B below the Company will act in accordance with, and will ensure that an Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, all relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code, and the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education ("the Codes") as they apply at any given time to maintained schools and with equalities law and the law on admissions as they apply to maintained schools. For this purpose, reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" shall be deemed to be references to the Directors of the Company.
 - 2A The Company is permitted to determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in accordance with the School Admissions Code) that give priority for admission (but not above looked after children and previously looked after children¹) to other children attracting the pupil premium, including the service premium ('the pupil premium admission criterion'). Where a Company exercises this freedom it will provide information in its admission arrangements of eligibility for the premiums.
 - 2B For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:
 - any personal details about their financial status; or
 - whether parents are serving in the armed forces (of any nation), stationed in England, and exercising parental care and responsibility for the child in question.
3. Notwithstanding the generality of paragraph 2 of this Annex, the Company will participate in the co-ordinated admission arrangements operated by the Local Authority (LA) and the local Fair Access Protocol.
4. Notwithstanding any provision in this Annex, the Secretary of State may:
 - (a) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to Aston Manor Academy on application from an LA. This will include complying

¹ As defined in the School Admissions Code.

Multi Academy Model

with a School Attendance Order². Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Company;

- (b) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to Aston Manor Academy if the Company has failed to act in accordance with this Annex or has otherwise failed to comply with applicable admissions and equalities legislation or the provisions of the Codes;
- (c) direct the Company to amend its admission arrangements where they fail to comply with the School Admissions Code or the School Admission Appeals Code.

5. The Company shall ensure that parents and 'relevant children'³ will have the right of appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Company. The Independent Appeal Panel will be independent of the Company. The arrangements for appeals will comply with the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education as it applies to Foundation and Voluntary Aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

Relevant Area

6. Subject to paragraph 7, the meaning of "Relevant Area" for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the local authority for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

7. If the Company does not consider the relevant area determined by the local authority for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Company and the LA in which the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.

Requirement to admit pupils

8. Pupils on roll in any predecessor maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at any predecessor school will be admitted.

9. The Company will:

² Local authorities are able to issue school attendance orders if a child is not attending school. These are legally binding upon parents. Such an order might, for instance, be appropriate where a child has a place at an Academy but his/her parents are refusing to send him/her to school. The order will require a parent to ensure his/her child attends a specified school.

³ 'relevant children' means:

- a) in the case of appeals for entry to a sixth form, the child, and;
- b) in any other case, children who are above compulsory school age, or will be above compulsory school age by the time they start to receive education at the school.

Multi Academy Model

- a. subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State in relation to a named pupil, admit all pupils with a statement of special educational needs naming the Academy;
- b. determine admission oversubscription criteria for the Academy that give highest priority to looked after children and previously looked after children, in accordance with the relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code.

Oversubscription criteria, admission number, consultation, determination and objections.

10. The Academy admission arrangements will include oversubscription criteria, and an admission number for each relevant age group⁴. The Company will consult on the Academy's admission arrangements and determine them in line with the requirements within the School Admissions Code.

11. The Office of the School's Adjudicator (OSA) will consider objections to the Academy's admission arrangements⁵. The Company should therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy's admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA.

12. A determination of an objection by the OSA will be binding upon the Academy and the Company will make appropriate changes as quickly as possible.

⁴ 'Relevant age group' means 'normal point of admission to the school, for example, year R, Year7 and Year 12.

⁵ The OSA has no jurisdiction to consider objections against the agreed variation from the Codes set out in paragraphs 2A and 2B.

Schedule 6

**Amended Chilwell Croft SFA
made pursuant to this**

Deed of Variation dated

2014

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT made

4 September 2012

BETWEEN

(1) **THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION**; and

(2) **EQUITAS ACADEMIES TRUST**

IS SUPPLEMENTAL TO THE MASTER FUNDING AGREEMENT made between the same parties and dated 4 September 2012 (the “**Master Agreement**”).

1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement shall have the same meanings in this Agreement as were ascribed to them in the Master Agreement.

1.2 The following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:

“the Academy” means Chilwell Croft Academy established at Chilwell Croft, Newtown, Birmingham, B19 2QH.

“Chief Inspector” means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;

“the Land” means the publicly funded land (including for the avoidance of doubt all buildings, structures landscaping and other erections) situated at and known as Chilwell Croft Academy, Chilwell Croft, Newtown, Birmingham, B19 2QH.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

1.3 Reference in this Agreement to clauses and Annexes shall, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes of this Agreement.

2 THE ACADEMY

2.1 The Company will establish and maintain, and carry on or provide for the carrying on of the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement¹.

2.2 The curriculum provided by the Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced.

2.3 The requirements for the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out at Annex 1.

ACADEMY OPENING DATE

2.4 The Academy opened on 1st September 2012 replacing Chilwell Croft Primary School which ceased to be maintained by the Local Authority on that date, which date shall be the conversion date within the meaning of the Academies Act 2010.

2.5 The planned capacity of the Academy is 420 in the age range 4-11.

3 CAPITAL GRANT

3.1 Pursuant to clause 38 of the Master Funding Agreement, the Secretary of State may, in his absolute discretion provide Capital Expenditure funding in accordance with any arrangements he considers appropriate.

¹ Where the Academy is to be a "selective school" within the meaning of section 6(4) of the Academies Act 2010, please see alternative wording for this clause in Section C. of the Appendix of Alternative and Additional Clauses. "

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

4 GAG AND EAG

4.1 The Secretary of State agrees to pay GAG and EAG to the Company in relation to the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement.

4A NOT USED

5 TERMINATION

5.1 Either party may give not less than seven Academy Financial Years' written notice to terminate this Agreement, such notice to expire on 31 August 2019 or any subsequent anniversary of that date.

Termination Warning Notice

5.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to issue to the Company a written notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement ("Termination Warning Notice") where he considers that:

- a) the Academy is no longer meeting the requirements referred to in clause 12 of the Master Agreement (subject to clause 5.9 of this Agreement);
- b) the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 13-34B of the Master Agreement are no longer being met;
- c) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low;
- d) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed;
- e) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened (whether by breakdown of discipline or otherwise); or
- f) the Company is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement.

5.3 A Termination Warning Notice issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with clause 5.2 shall specify:

- a) reasons for the Secretary of State's issue of the Termination Warning

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

Notice;

- b) the remedial measures which the Secretary of State requires the Company to carry out, with associated deadlines, in order to rectify the defaults identified ("Specified Remedial Measures"); and
- c) the date by which the Company must respond to the Termination Warning Notice providing its representations with regard thereto or confirm that it accepts and agrees to undertake the Specified Remedial Measures.

5.4 The Secretary of State shall consider any response and representations from the Company which are received by the date specified in accordance with clause 5.3(c) and shall confirm whether he considers that:

- a) in the light of the Company's representations in response to the Termination Warning Notice, some or all of the Specified Remedial Measures are not required to be implemented (and if so which) and/or the Specified Remedial Measures are being or will be implemented within the specified timeframe; or
- b) subject to any further measures he reasonably requires ("Further Remedial Measures") being implemented by a specified date or any evidence he requires being provided, the implementation of such measures has been or will be successfully completed within the specified timeframes; or
- c) he is not satisfied that the Company will rectify the defaults identified in the Termination Warning Notice within the specified timeframes. (In such circumstances, the Secretary of State may notify the Company of his intention to terminate the Agreement on a specified date.)

5.5 The Secretary of State may by notice in writing terminate this Agreement with effect from a specified date in the event that:

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

a) the Company has not, by the date specified in clause 5.3(c), responded to the Termination Warning Notice either confirming that it accepts and agrees to undertake the Specified Remedial Measures or providing its representations with regard to the Specified Remedial Measures; or

b) the Company has not carried out the Specified Remedial Measures and/or Further Remedial Measures within the specified timeframes;

provided that having considered any representations made by the Academy Trust pursuant to clause 5.3(c), the Secretary of State remains satisfied that it is appropriate to terminate the Agreement.

Notice of Intention to Terminate

5.6 The Secretary of State may at any time give written notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement where the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Company in accordance with section 13(3) of the Education Act 2005 stating that in the Chief Inspector's opinion –

(a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy; or

(b) the Academy requires significant improvement.

5.7 Any notice issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with clause 5.6 shall invite the Company to respond with any representations within a specified timeframe.

5.8 Where the Secretary of State has given notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement in accordance with clauses 5.6 and 5.7 and –

(a) he has not received any representations from the Company within the timeframe specified in clause 5.7; or

(b) having considered the representations made by the Company pursuant to clause 5.7, the Secretary of State remains satisfied that it

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

is appropriate to terminate this Agreement

he may by notice in writing terminate this Agreement with effect from a specified date.

Termination with Immediate Effect

5.9 If the Secretary of State has cause to serve a notice on the Company under section 165 of the Education Act 2002 and a determination (from which all rights of appeal have been exhausted) has been made that the Academy shall be struck off the Register of Independent Schools, he may terminate this Agreement by notice in writing to the Company such termination to take effect on the date of the notice.

Notice of Intention to Terminate by Company

5.10 The Secretary of State shall, at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide to the Company an indication of the level of funding to be provided by the Secretary of State to the Company by way of GAG and EAG in the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Indicative Funding**”). If the Company is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Indicative Funding for the next following Academy Financial Year (the “**Critical Year**”) and of the taking into account all other resources available and likely to be available to the Academy, including such funds as are set out in clause 73 of the Master Agreement and such other funds as are and likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Company (“**All Other Resources**”), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding, to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Company may give notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement at the end of the then current Academy Financial Year.

5.11 Any notice given by the Company under clause 5.10 shall be in writing and shall be served on the Secretary of State not later than 28 February

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

preceding the Critical Year or, if the Secretary of State shall not have given notice of the Indicative Funding to the Company on or before the date specified in clause 5.10 above, within six weeks after the Secretary of State shall have done so. The notice must specify:

5.11.1. the grounds upon which the Company's opinion is based and include the evidence of those grounds and any professional accounting advice the Company has received and including a detailed statement of steps which the Company proposes to take with a view to ensuring that as soon as reasonably practicable the costs of running the Academy are reduced sufficiently to ensure that such costs are less than the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and

5.11.2. the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Company to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and

5.11.3. a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the "**Projected Budget**").

5.12 Both parties undertake to use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and undertake to use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.

5.13 If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or such other date as may be agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources would cause the Company to become insolvent, then that

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

question shall be referred to an independent expert (the “**Expert**”) for resolution. The Expert’s determination shall be final and binding on both parties. The Expert shall be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the “**Shortfall**”). The Expert shall be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert shall be appointed by the President for the time being of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.

5.14 The Expert shall be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist shall be appointed by the Chairman for the time being of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust. The educational specialist’s fees shall be borne equally between the parties.

5.15 If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Company, on the basis of the Indicative Funding and All Other Resources, to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State shall not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Company shall be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August prior to the Critical Year. Any such notice shall be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert’s determination shall have been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State shall have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

6 EFFECT OF TERMINATION

6.1 In the event of termination of this Agreement however occurring, the school shall cease to be an Academy within the meaning of Sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

6.2 Subject to clauses 6.3 and 6.4, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement pursuant to clause 5.1 of this Agreement, the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Company. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than pursuant to clause 5.1 of this Agreement, the Secretary of State may in his absolute discretion indemnify or (to such extent if any as he may in his absolute discretion consider appropriate) compensate the Company.

6.3 The amount of any such indemnity or compensation shall be determined by the Secretary of State having regard to any representations made to him by the Company, and shall be paid at such times and in such manner as the Secretary of State may reasonably think fit.

6.4 The categories of expenditure incurred by the Company in consequence of the termination of the Agreement in respect of which the Secretary of State shall (where the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement pursuant to clause 5.1) indemnify the Company and may (where the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than pursuant to clause 5.1) in his absolute discretion indemnify or compensate the Company include (but not by way of limitation), staff compensation and redundancy payments, compensation payments in respect of broken contracts, expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes, legal and other professional fees, and dissolution expenses.

6.5 Subject to clause 6.6, on the termination of this Agreement however occurring, the Company shall in respect of any of its capital assets at the date of termination:

(a) promptly transfer a proportion of the assets to a person nominated by the Secretary of State, if the Secretary of State considers that all or some of those assets need to be used for any educational purposes by that nominee. The proportion of the assets to be transferred shall be the same as the proportion of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

the establishment of the Academy or at a later date; or

(b) if the Secretary of State confirms that a transfer under clause 6.5(a) is not required, promptly repay to the Secretary of State a sum equivalent to the percentage of the value of the assets at the date of termination, or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of subsequent disposal of those assets. Such percentage to be the same as the percentage of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later.

6.6 The Secretary of State may waive in whole or in part the repayment due under clause 6.5(b) if:

- a) the Company obtains his permission to invest the proceeds of sale for its charitable objects; or
- b) the Secretary of State directs all or part of the repayment to be paid to the LA.

6.7 The sale or disposal by other means of publicly funded land held for the purposes of an Academy is now governed by Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

LAND

Restrictions on Land transfer

6A Recognising that they are or will be receiving publicly funded land at nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent) the Company:

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

a) shall, within 28 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry for a restriction in the proprietorship register (under section 43(1)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002 in Form RX1 as prescribed by Rule 91 and Schedule 4 of the Land Registration Rules 2003) in the following terms:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT

b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,

c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,

d) in the event that it has not registered the restriction referred to in clause 6A(a), hereby consents to the entering of the restriction referred to in 6A(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (under s. 43(1)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),

e) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a restriction entered in accordance with clause 6A(a) or 6A(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Company.

7 **ANNEX**

7.1 The Annex to this Agreement forms part of and is incorporated into this Agreement.

8 **THE MASTER AGREEMENT**

8.1 Except as expressly provided in this Agreement the Master Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

9 **GENERAL**

9.1 This Agreement shall not be assignable by the Company.

9.2 No delay, neglect or forbearance on the part of the Secretary of State in enforcing (in whole or in part) any provision of this Agreement or in exercising (in whole or in part) any right or remedy conferred on him by this Agreement shall be or be deemed to be a waiver of such provision or right or remedy or a waiver of any other provision or right or remedy or shall in any way prejudice any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement or shall amount to an election not to enforce such provision or exercise such right or remedy (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any right to terminate this Agreement). No single or partial exercise of such right or remedy shall preclude or restrict the further exercise of that or any other right or remedy.

9.3 Termination of this agreement, for any reason, shall not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.

9.4 This deed may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute the one agreement.

9.5 This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in

Multi Academy Model
Mainstream

accordance with the law of England and Wales.

9.6 The parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out of or in connection with this agreement or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

Annex 1

REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ADMISSION OF PUPILS TO CHILWELL CROFT ACADEMY

GENERAL

1. This annex may be amended in writing at any time by agreement between the Secretary of State and the Company.
2. Except as provided in paragraphs 2A to 2B below the Company will act in accordance with, and will ensure that an Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, all relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code, and the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education ("the Codes") as they apply at any given time to maintained schools and with equalities law and the law on admissions as they apply to maintained schools. For this purpose, reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" shall be deemed to be references to the Directors of the Company.
 - 2A The Company is permitted to determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in accordance with the School Admissions Code) that give priority for admission (but not above looked after children and previously looked after children¹) to other children attracting the pupil premium, including the service premium ('the pupil premium admission criterion'). Where a Company exercises this freedom it will provide information in its admission arrangements of eligibility for the premiums.
 - 2B For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:
 - any personal details about their financial status; or
 - whether parents are serving in the armed forces (of any nation), stationed in England, and exercising parental care and responsibility for the child in question.
3. Notwithstanding the generality of paragraph 2 of this Annex, the Company will participate in the co-ordinated admission arrangements operated by the Local Authority (LA) and the local Fair Access Protocol.
4. Notwithstanding any provision in this Annex, the Secretary of State may:
 - (a) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to Chilwell Croft Academy on application from an LA. This will include complying

¹ As defined in the School Admissions Code.

Multi Academy Model

with a School Attendance Order². Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Company;

- (b) direct the Company to admit a named pupil to Chilwell Croft Academy if the Company has failed to act in accordance with this Annex or has otherwise failed to comply with applicable admissions and equalities legislation or the provisions of the Codes;
- (c) direct the Company to amend its admission arrangements where they fail to comply with the School Admissions Code or the School Admission Appeals Code.

5. The Company shall ensure that parents and 'relevant children'³ will have the right of appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Company. The Independent Appeal Panel will be independent of the Company. The arrangements for appeals will comply with the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education as it applies to Foundation and Voluntary Aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

Relevant Area

6. Subject to paragraph 7, the meaning of "Relevant Area" for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the local authority for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

7. If the Company does not consider the relevant area determined by the local authority for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Company and the LA in which the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.

Requirement to admit pupils

8. Pupils on roll in any predecessor maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at any predecessor school will be admitted.

9. The Company will:

² Local authorities are able to issue school attendance orders if a child is not attending school. These are legally binding upon parents. Such an order might, for instance, be appropriate where a child has a place at an Academy but his/her parents are refusing to send him/her to school. The order will require a parent to ensure his/her child attends a specified school.

³ 'relevant children' means:

- a) in the case of appeals for entry to a sixth form, the child, and;
- b) in any other case, children who are above compulsory school age, or will be above compulsory school age by the time they start to receive education at the school.

Multi Academy Model

- a. subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State in relation to a named pupil, admit all pupils with a statement of special educational needs naming the Academy;
- b. determine admission oversubscription criteria for the Academy that give highest priority to looked after children and previously looked after children, in accordance with the relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code.

Oversubscription criteria, admission number, consultation, determination and objections.

10. The Academy admission arrangements will include oversubscription criteria, and an admission number for each relevant age group⁴. The Company will consult on the Academy's admission arrangements and determine them in line with the requirements within the School Admissions Code.

11. The Office of the School's Adjudicator (OSA) will consider objections to the Academy's admission arrangements⁵. The Company should therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy's admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA.

12. A determination of an objection by the OSA will be binding upon the Academy and the Company will make appropriate changes as quickly as possible.

⁴ 'Relevant age group' means 'normal point of admission to the school, for example, year R, Year7 and Year 12.

⁵ The OSA has no jurisdiction to consider objections against the agreed variation from the Codes set out in paragraphs 2A and 2B.